	All Hero Light May commendate	
FORM PTO-1390 U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERC	CE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE	1SIS-2297 254 - 65
TRANSMITTAL LETTE DESIGNATED/ELEC CONCERNING A FILI	U.S. APPLICATION NO. (if known see 37 C.F.R. 1.5)  08/973,381	
INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION NO. PCT/US96/09604	INTERNATIONAL FILING DATE JUNE 7, 1996	PRIORITY DATE CLAIMED JUNE 7, 1995
TITLE OF INVENTION COMBINA	TORIAL LIBRARIES HAVING AMI	NODIOL MONOMER SUBUNITS
APPLICANT(S) FOR DO/EO/US Nor	mand HEBERT	
Applicant herewith submits to the United S	States Designated/Elected Office (DO/E0	O/US) the following items and other information:
2. X This is a SECOND or SUBSECTION of the expression of the applicable.	time limit set in 35 U.S.C. 371(b) and	s a filing under 35 U.S.C. 371. C. 371(f) ) at any time rather than delay examination until
a. is transmitted herewith (require	plication as filed (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2)). Ed only if not transmitted by the Internate ternational Bureau. It is simple to the United States Receival Application into English (35 U.S.C. 3	ing Office (RO/US)
a are transmitted herewith (requi	the time limit for making such amendm	ational Bureau).
8. A translation of the amendmen	tts to the claims under PCT Article 19 (	35 U.S.C. 371(c)(3)).
9. X An oath or declaration of the i	nventor(s) 35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4).	
10 A translation of the annexes to	the International Preliminary Examinat	ion Report under PCT Article 36 (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(5)).
Items 11. to 16. below concern other do 11 An Information Disclosure Sta	ocument(s) or information included: tement under 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98.	
12 An assignment document for r	recording. A separate cover sheet in co	mpliance with 37 CFR 3.28 and 3.31 is included.
13 A FIRST preliminary amendm A SECOND or SUBSEQUEN	nent. T preliminary amendment.	
14 A substitute specification.		
15 A change of power of attorney	y and/or address letter.	
16. X Other items or information: A	ssociate Power of Attorney	
GB/27/1998 PVOLPE 00000080 08973381 GI FC:254 65.00	Da I h Ur Ad ab Pa M.	TPRESS MAIL Mailing Label No. EL066384310US te of Deposit: MARCH 25, 1998 A ereby certify that this paper or fee is being deposited with the nited States Postal Service "Express Mail Post Office to Idressee" service under 37 CFR 1.10 on the date indicated ove and is addressed to the Assistant Commissioner for tents, Washington, D.C. 20231  AILER BOB INFORZATO  GNATURE

U.S. APPLICATION NO. (i 08/973,381	S. APPLICATION NO. (if known 37 C.F.R. 1.5) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION NO. PCT/US96/09604		ATTORNEY DOCKET NUMBER ISIS-2297		
17. X The following fees are submitted:  Basic National Fee (37 CFR 1.492(a)(1)-(5)): Search Report has been prepared by the EPO or JPO\$930.00			CALCULATIONS	PTO USE ONLY	
Internationa	l preliminary examination	on fee paid to USPTO (37	7 CFR 1.482)		
No internati	ional preliminary examin	nation fee paid to USPTO PTO (37 CFR 1.445(a)(2)	) (37 CFR 1.482) but	l	
Neither international preliminary examination fee (37 CFR 1.482) nor international search fee (37 CFR 1.445(a)(2)) paid to USPTO\$1,070.00					
International preliminary examination fee paid to USPTO (37 CFR 1.482) and all claims satisfied provisions of PCT Article 33(2)-(4)\$98.00					
	ENTER	R APPROPRIATE BASI	C FEE AMOUNT =	\$	
Surcharge of \$130.00 from the earliest claim	for furnishing the oath oned priority date (37 CFI	or declaration later that _ R 1.492(e)).	20 <u>X</u> 30 months	\$130	
Claims	Number Filed	Number Extra	Rate		
Total claims	- 20 =		X \$22.00	\$	
Independent Claims	- 3 =		x \$82.00	\$	
Multiple dependent cla	aims(s) (if applicable)		+ \$270.00	\$	
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		TOTAL OF ABOVE	CALCULATIONS =	\$130	
Reduction by ½ for filing by small entity, if applicable. Verified Small Entity statement must also be filed. (Note 37 CFR 1.9, 1.27, 1.28). Small Entity Statement was filed on December 3, 1997			\$65		
SUBTOTAL =			\$65		
Processing fee of \$130.00 for furnishing the English translation later the _ 2030 months _ from the earliest claimed priority date (37 CFR 1.492(f))			\$		
TOTAL NATIONAL FEE =			\$65		
Fee for recording the accompanied by an a	enclosed assignment (3' ppropriate cover sheet (	7 CFR 1.21(h)). The ass 37 CFR 3.28, 3.31). \$40	signment must be 0.00 per property +		
		TOTAL	FEES ENCLOSED =	\$65	
				Amount to be: refunded	\$
				charged	\$
a. X A check in	n the amount of \$_65_ to	o cover the above fee is e	enclosed.		
b Please cha		nt No. 23-3050 in the amo	ount of \$ to cov	ver the above fees. A du	plicate copy of this she
c. X The Commacount N	missioner if hereby auth- No. 23-3050. A duplica	norized to charge any addite copy of this sheet is en	itional fees which may be nclosed.	e required, or credit any	overpayment to Deposi
NOTE: Where an a	appropriate time limit ranted to restore the a	under 37 CFR 1.494 or pplication to pending sta	atus.	~ /	7 CFR 1.137(a) or (b))
SEND ALL CORRE Michael P. Straher			SIGNATURE	ral	
Woodcock Washburi			•		
Mackiewicz & Nor			<u>Michael P. Straher</u> NAME	<del></del>	
	Philadelphia, PA 19103				
(215) 568-3100 <u>38,325</u> REGISTRATION N				IMDED	
11			KEGIST KATION NO	IVIDEIX	

80 Rec'd PCT/PTO 03 DEC1997

FORM PTO-1390 U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE		ATTORNEY DOCKET NUMBER ISIS-2297				
TRANSMITTAL LETTER TO THE UNITED STATES DESIGNATED/ELECTED OFFICE (DQ/EO/US) CONCERNING A FILING UNDER 35 U.S.C. 371		U.S. APPLICATION NO. (if known see 37 C.F.R. 1.5)08/973381				
INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION NO. PCT/US96/09604	INTERNATIONAL FILING DATE 07 JUNE 1996	PRIORITY DATE CLAIMED 07 JUNE 1995				
TITLE OF INVENTION COMBINAT	TORIAL LIBRARIES HAVING AMINODIOL	MONOMER SUBUNITS				
APPLICANT(S) FOR DO/EO/US HEE	BERT, Normand					
Applicant herewith submits to the United Sta	ates Designated/Elected Office (DO/EO/US) the	following items and other information:				
<ol> <li>This is a SECOND or SUBSEQUENT This express request to begin nate the expiration of the applicable time.</li> </ol>	tems concerning a filing under 35 U.S.C. 371. UENT submission of items concerning a filing untional examination procedures (35 U.S.C. 371(f) ime limit set in 35 U.S.C. 371(b) and PCT Articlar Preliminary Examination was made by the 190.	) at any time rather than delay examination until les 22 and 39(1).				
<ul> <li>a is transmitted herewith (required</li> <li>b has been transmitted by the Inter</li> <li>c. X is not required, as the application</li> </ul>	ication as filed (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2)). only if not transmitted by the International Bureau. on was filed in the United States Receiving Office Application into English (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2)).					
a are transmitted herewith (required b have been transmitted by the Inter-	ne time limit for making such amendments has Ne	eau).				
	to the claims under PCT Article 19 (35 U.S.C. 3	371(c)(3)).				
9 An oath or declaration of the inventor(s) 35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4).						
A translation of the annexes to the International Preliminary Examination Report under PCT Article 36 (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(5)).						
Items 11. to 16. below concern other document(s) or information included:  11 An Information Disclosure Statement under 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98.						
12 An assignment document for recording. A separate cover sheet in compliance with 37 CFR 3.28 and 3.31 is included.						
13 A FIRST preliminary amendment A SECOND or SUBSEQUENT preliminary amendment.						
14 A substitute specification.						
15 A change of power of attorney and/or address letter.						
16. X Other items or information: Verif	ried Statement Claiming Small Entity Status					
	EXPRESS MA	IL Mailing Label No. EM155912058US				

Date of Deposit: DECEMBER 3, 1997 B. A

I hereby certify that this paper or fee is being deposited with the United States Postal Service "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service under 37 CFR 1.10 on the date indicated above and is addressed to the Assistant Commissioner for

Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231

MAILER BOB INFORZATO
SIGNATURE

		<del>,</del>				
U.S. APPLICATION NO.	U.S. APPLICATION NO. (if known 37 C.F.R. 1.5)  INTÉRNATIONAL APPLICATION NO. PCT/US96/09604		PPLICATION NO.	ATTORNEY DOCKET NUMBER ISIS-2297		
17. X The following fees are submitted:  Basic National Fee (37 CFR 1.492(a)(1)-(5)):  Search Report has been prepared by the EPO or JPO\$930.00			CALCULATIONS	PTO USE ONLY		
International preliminary examination fee paid to USPTO (37 CFR 1.482)						
No international preliminary examination fee paid to USPTO (37 CFR 1.482) but international search fee paid to USPTO (37 CFR 1.445(a)(2))\$790.00						
		camination fee (37 CFR in id to USPTO				
		on fee paid to USPTO (3 Article 33(2)-(4)				
	ENTER	APPROPRIATE BASI	IC FEE AMOUNT =	\$720.00		
Surcharge of \$130.00 for furnishing the oath or declaration later that2030 months from the earliest claimed priority date (37 CFR 1.492(e)).		\$				
Claims	Number Filed	Number Extra	Rate			
Total claims	26 - 20 =	6	X \$22.00	\$132		
Independent Claims	4 -3=	1	x \$82.00	\$82		
Multiple dependent cla	aims(s) (if applicable)		+ \$270.00	\$		
		TOTAL OF ABOVE	CALCULATIONS =	\$934	,	
Reduction by ½ for filing by small entity, if applicable. Verified Small Entity statement must also be filed. (Note 37 CFR 1.9, 1.27, 1.28).			\$467			
SUBTOTAL =			\$467			
Processing fee of \$130.00 for furnishing the English translation later the _2030 months from the earliest claimed priority date (37 CFR 1.492(f))			\$			
TOTAL NATIONAL FEE =			\$467			
		CFR 1.21(h)). The assi 7 CFR 3.28, 3.31). \$40				
TOTAL FEES ENCLOSED =		\$467				
				Amount to be: refunded	\$	
				charged	\$	
a. X A check in	the amount of \$ 467.00	to cover the above fe	e is enclosed.			
b Please char is enclosed	ge my Deposit Account	No. 23-3050 in the amor	unt of \$ to cove	er the above fees. A dup	plicate copy of this shee	
c. X The Comm Account No	issioner if hereby author o. 23-3050. A duplicate	rized to charge any additional copy of this sheet is end	ional fees which may be closed.	required, or credit any	overpayment to Deposit	
NOTE: Where an ap	ppropriate time limit un inted to restore the app	nder 37 CFR 1.494 or 1	.495 has not been met, us.	a petition to revive (37	CFR 1.137(a) or (b))	
SEND ALL CORRESPONDENCE TO:  STRAHER, Michael P.  Woodcock Washburn Kurtz  Mackiewicz & Norris LLP  One Liberty Place - 46th Floor  Philadelphia, PA 19103						
(215) 568-3100 <u>38,325</u> REGISTRATION NUM			(RER			
			TOTAL MODE TO THE TRUE TO THE	TOTAL STATE	i	

D8/97335

# COMBINATORIAL LIBRARIES HAVING AMINODIOL MONOMER SUBUNITS

# CROSS REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application is a continuation-in-part of United States Application Serial No. 08/483,311, filed 6/7/95;, which is a continuation-in-part of PCT application Serial No. PCT/US95 /00356 filed 1/11/95, which is a continuation-in-part of United States Application Serial No. 08/180,134, filed 1/11/94; which is a continuation in part of United States Application 08/179,970, filed 1/11/94 which issued on 5/21/96 as U.S. Patent Serial No. 5519134. Each of these patent applications are assigned to the assignee of this application and are incorporated by reference herein.

## BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

the screening of complex fermentation broths and plant extracts for a desired biological activity or the chemical synthesis of many new compounds for evaluation as potential drugs. The advantage of screening mixtures from biological sources is that a large number of compounds are screened simultaneously, in some cases leading to the discovery of novel and complex natural products with activity that could not have been predicted otherwise. The disadvantages are that many different samples must be screened and numerous

10

15

20

25

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 2 -

purifications must be carried out to identify the active component, often present only in trace amounts. On the other hand, laboratory syntheses give unambiguous products, but the preparation of each new structure requires significant amounts of resources. Generally, the de novo design of active compounds based on the high resolution structures of enzymes has not been successful.

It is thus now widely appreciated that combinatorial libraries are useful per se and that such libraries and compounds comprising them have great commercial importance. Indeed, a branch of chemistry has developed to exploit the many commercial aspects of combinatorial libraries.

In order to maximize the advantages of each classical approach, new strategies for combinatorial deconvolution have been developed independently by several groups. Selection techniques have been used with libraries of peptides (Geysen, H. M., Rodda, S. J., Mason, T. J., Tribbick, G. and Schoofs, P. G., J. Immun. Meth. 1987, 102, 259-274; Houghten, R. A., Pinilla, C., Blondelle, S. E., Appel, J. R., Dooley, C. T. and Cuervo, J. H., Nature, 1991, 354, 84-86; Owens, R. A., Gesellchen, P. D., Houchins, B. J. and DiMarchi, R. D., Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun., 1991, 181, 402-408; Doyle, M.V., PCT WO 94/28424; Brennan, T.M., PCT WO 94/27719); nucleic acids (Wyatt, J. R., et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 1994, 91, 1356-1360; Ecker, D. J., Vickers, T. A., Hanecak, R., Driver, V. and Anderson, K., Nucleic Acids Res., 1993, 21, 1853-1856); nonpeptides and small molecules (Simon, R. J., et al., Proc. Natl. Acad.

30 Sci. USA, 1992, 89, 9367-9371; Zuckermann, R. N., et al., J. Amer. Chem. Soc., 1992, 114, 10646-10647; Bartlett, Santi, Simon, PCT W091/19735; Ohlmeyer, M. H., et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 1993, 90, 10922-10926; DeWitt, S. H., Kiely, J. S., Stankovic, C. J., Schroeder, M.C. Reynolds

protein targets.

Cody, D.M. and Pavia, M.R., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, **1993**, *90*, 6909-6913; Cody *et al.*, United States patent 5,324,483; Houghten *et al.*, PCT WO 94/26775; Ellman, United States patent 5,288,514; Still *et al.*, PCT WO 94/08051;

- 5 Kauffman et al., PCT WO 94/24314; Carell, T., Wintner, D.
  A., Bashir-Hashemi, A. and Rebek, J., Angew. Chem. Int. Ed.
  Engel., 1994, 33, 2059-2061; Carell, T., Wintner, D. A. and
  Rebek, J., Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engel., 1994, 33, 20612064; Lebl, et al., PCT WO 94/28028). A review of the above
  10 references reveals that the most advanced of these
  techniques are those for selection of peptides and nucleic
- techniques are those for selection of peptides and nucleic acids. Several groups are working on selection of heterocycles such as benzodiazepines. With the exception of Rebek et al., scant attention has been given to combinatorial discovery of other types of molecules.

The majority of the techniques reported to date involve iterative synthesis and screening of increasingly simplified subsets of oligomers. Monomers or sub-monomers that have been utilized include amino acids, amino acid-like molecules, i.e. carbamate precursors, and nucleotides, both of which are bifunctional. Utilizing these techniques, libraries have been assayed for activity in either cell-

based assays, or for binding and/or inhibition of purified

A technique, called SURF™ (Synthetic Unrandomization of Randomized Fragments), involves the synthesis of subsets of oligomers containing a known residue at one fixed position and equimolar mixtures of residues at all other positions. For a library of oligomers four residues long containing

three monomers (A, B, C), three subsets each containing 27 compounds would be synthesized (NNAN, NNBN, NNCN, where N represents equal incorporation of each of the three monomers). Each subset is then screened in a functional assay and the best subset is identified (e.g. NNAN). A

15

20

25

30

35

second set of subsets is synthesized and screened, each containing the fixed residue from the previous round, and a second fixed residue (e.g. ANAN, BNAN, CNAN, each containing 9 molecules). Through successive rounds of screening and synthesis, a unique sequence with activity in the functional assay can be identified. The SURF<sup>TM</sup> technique is described in Ecker, D.J., Vickers, T. A., Hanecak, R., Driver, V. & Anderson, K., Nucleic Acids Res., 1993, 21, 1853-1856. The SURF<sup>TM</sup> method is further described in PCT patent application WO 93/04204, the entire disclosure of which is herein incorporated by reference.

The combinatorial chemical approach that has been most utilized to date, utilizes an oligomerization from a solid support using monomeric units and a defined connecting chemistry, i.e. a solid support monomer approach. approach has been utilized in the synthesis of libraries of peptides, peptoids, carbamates and vinylogous peptides connected by amide or carbamate linkages or nucleic acids connected by phosphate linkages as exemplified by the citations in previous paragraphs above. A mixture of oligomers (pool or library) is obtained from the addition of a mixture of activated monomers during the coupling step or from the coupling of individual monomers with a portion of the support (bead splitting) followed by remixing of the support and subsequent splitting for the next coupling. this monomeric approach, each monomeric unit would carry a tethered letter, i.e., a functional group for interaction with the target. Further coupling chemistry that allows for the insertion of a tethered letter at a chemically activated intermediate stage is referred to as the sub-monomer approach.

The diversity of the oligomeric pool is represented by the inherent physical properties of each monomer, the number of different monomers mixed at each coupling, the physical properties of the chemical bonds

10

15

arising from the coupling chemistry (the backbone), the number of couplings (length of oligomer), and the interactions of the backbone and monomer chemistries. Taken together, these interactions provide a unique conformation for each individual molecule.

There remains a need in the art for molecules which have fixed preorganized geometry that matches that of targets such as proteins and enzymes, nucleic acids, lipids and other targets. The backbone of such molecules should be rigid with some flexibility, and such molecules should be easy to construct via automated synthesis on solid support.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

In accordance with this invention there are provided oligomeric compounds and libraries of such compounds comprising a plurality of aminodiol monomer subunits joined by linking groups, wherein each of said aminodiol monomer subunits has one of the structures I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, or XI;

wherein:

5

each x is, independently, 0 to 5;

na, nb and nc are each, independently, 0 to 2,

where the sum of na, nb and nc is from 1 to 5;

 $R_1$  is -T-L or a base labile protecting group;

T is a single bond, a methylene group or a group having formula:

$${ [CR_6R_7]_m - (R_5) - [CR_8R_9]_n - [C(R_{10})]_p - (E) - }_q -$$

where:

5

15

20

25

30

35

 $R_{10}$  is =0, =S, or =N $R_{11}$ ;

 $$R_{5}$$  and E, independently, are a single bond, CH=CH, C=C, O, S, NR $_{11},$  or  $C_{6}\text{--}C_{14}$  aryl;

each  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$ ,  $R_9$ ,  $R_{11}$ ,  $R_{12}$  and  $R_{13}$  are, independently, H, alkyl or haloalkyl having 1 to about 10 carbon atoms, alkenyl having 2 to about 10 carbon atoms, alkynyl having 2 to about 10 carbon atoms, or aryl having 7 to about 14 carbon atoms;

m and n, independently, are 0 to 5; p is 0 or 1;

q is 1 to about 10;

L is H, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkenyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2$ - $C_{10}$  alkynyl, substituted or unsubstituted C<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> carbocyclic alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted C<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> carbocyclic alkenyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_4 - C_7$ carbocyclic alkynyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_{\epsilon}-C_{14}$  aryl, an ether having 2 to 10 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 oxygen or sulfur atoms, a nitrogen containing heterocycle, a sulfur containing heterocycle, an oxygen containing heterocycle, a metal coordination group, a conjugate group, halogen, hydroxyl (OH), thiol (SH), keto (C=O), carboxyl (COOH), amide (CONR<sub>12</sub>), amidine (C(=NH)NR<sub>12</sub>R<sub>13</sub>), guanidine (NHC (=NH)  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ ), glutamyl ( $R_{12}OOCCH (NR_{12}R_{13}) (CH_2)_2C (=O)$ , nitrate (ONO2), nitro (NO2), nitrile (CN), trifluoromethyl (CF<sub>3</sub>), trifluoromethoxy (OCF<sub>3</sub>), O-alkyl, S-alkyl, NH-alkyl, N-dialkyl, O-aralkyl, S-aralkyl, NH-aralkyl, amino (NH<sub>2</sub>), azido (N<sub>3</sub>), hydrazino (NHNH<sub>2</sub>), hydroxylamino (ONH<sub>2</sub>), sulfoxide (SO), sulfone (SO<sub>2</sub>), sulfide (S-), disulfide (S-S), silyl, a nucleosidic base, an amino acid side chain, a carbohydrate, a biopharmaceutically active moiety, or group capable of hydrogen bonding where the substituent groups are selected from hydroxyl, amino, alkoxy, alcohol, benzyl, phenyl, nitro, thiol, thioalkoxy, halogen, alkyl, aryl, alkenyl, and

15

alkynyl groups;

 $R_2$  is hydrogen or  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl;

 $R_3$  and  $R_4$  are independently hydrogen, an acid labile hydroxyl protecting group, a linking group or a conjugate group, wherein said linking group has the formula:

$$-\stackrel{J_1}{\not}_2$$

wherein:

 $J_1$  is =0 or =S;

 $J_2$  is OH or  $N(Y_0)T_0$ ;

 $Y_0$  is H or  $[Q_2]_i - Z_2$ ;

 $T_0$  is  $\left[Q_1\right]_k - Z_1\text{,}$  or together  $Y_0$  and  $T_0$  are joined in a nitrogen heterocycle;

 $Q_1$  and  $Q_2$  independently are  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkyl,  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkenyl,  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkynyl,  $C_4-C_7$  carbocylo alkyl  $C_4-C_7$  carbocylo alkenyl, a heterocycle, an ether having 2 to 10 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 oxygen or sulfur atoms, a polyalkyl glycol, or  $C_7-C_{14}$  aralkyl;

j and k independently are 0 or 1;

 $Z_1$  and  $Z_2$  independently are H,  $C_1$ - $C_2$  alkyl,  $C_2$ - $C_{20}$  alkenyl,  $C_2$ - $C_{20}$  alkenyl,  $C_6$ - $C_{14}$  aryl,  $C_7$ - $C_{15}$  aralkyl, halogen, CH=O,  $OR_{12}$ ,  $SR_{12}$ ,  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , C (=NH)  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , CH ( $NR_{12}R_{13}$ ), NHC (=NH)  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , CH ( $NH_2$ ) C (=O) OH, C (=O)  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , C (=O)  $OR_{12}$ , a metal coordination group, a reporter group, a nitrogen-containing heterocycle, a purine, a pyrimidine, a phosphate group, a polyether group, or a polyethylene glycol group; and

provided that at least one of said aminodiol monomer subunits in said oligomeric compound does not have structure III.

Further in accordance with this invention there are provided processes for preparing oligomeric

compounds and libraries of such compounds comprising:

(a) selecting an aminodiol monomer subunit having the structure I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, or XI:

wherein:

5

10

each x is, independently, 0 to 5;

na, nb and nc are each, independently, 0 to 2, where the sum of na, nb and nc is from 1 to 5;

 $R_1$  is a base labile protecting group;

 $R_2$  is hydrogen or  $C_1\text{-}C_{10}$  alkyl; and

one of  $R_3$  or  $R_4$  is hydrogen or an activated phosphite group and the other of  $R_3$  or  $R_4$  is an acid labile hydroxyl protecting group;

(b) attaching said aminodiol monomer subunit to a

Services.

solid support to form a solid support bound aminodiol monomer subunit;

- (c) treating said acid labile hydroxyl protecting group with a dilute acid to form a free hydroxyl group,
- (d) reacting said free hydroxyl group with a further aminodiol monomer subunit having structure I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, or XI, thereby forming an oligomeric compound bound to said solid support, said oligomeric compound containing a phosphite linkage;
- (e) optionally iteratively repeating steps (c) and(d) to increase the length of the oligomeric compound bound to said solid support;
- (f) optionally, prior to step (c) or after step (d) oxidizing said phosphite linkage to form a phosphate linking group wherein said linking groups are selected having formula:



wherein:

20

 $J_1$  is =0 or =S;

 $J_2$  is OH or  $N(Y_0)T_0$ ;

 $Y_0$  is H or  $[Q_2]_i - Z_2$ ;

 $T_0$  is  $\left[Q_1\right]_k-Z_1$  , or together  $Y_0$  and  $T_0$  are joined in a nitrogen heterocycle;

 $Q_1$  and  $Q_2$  independently, are  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkyl,  $C_2-C_{10}$  25 alkenyl,  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkynyl,  $C_4-C_7$  carbocylo alkyl or alkenyl, a heterocycle, an ether having 2 to 10 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 oxygen or sulfur atoms, a polyalkyl glycol, or  $C_7-C_{14}$  aralkyl;

j and k independently, are 0 or 1;

 $Z_1$  and  $Z_2$  independently are H,  $C_1 - C_2$  alkyl,  $C_2 - C_{20}$ 

30 alkenyl,  $C_2-C_{20}$  alkynyl,  $C_6-C_{14}$  aryl,  $C_7-C_{15}$  aralkyl, halogen,

20

25

CH=O,  $OR_{12}$ ,  $SR_{12}$ ,  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ ,  $C(=NH)NR_{12}R_{13}$ ,  $CH(NR_{12}R_{13})$ ,  $NHC(=NH)NR_{12}R_{13}$ ,  $CH(NH_2)C(=O)OH$ ,  $C(=O)NR_{12}R_{13}$ ,  $C(=O)OR_{12}$ , a metal coordination group, a reporter group, a nitrogen-containing heterocycle, a purine, a pyrimidine, a phosphate group, a polyether group, or a polyethylene glycol group; and

(g) prior to step (e) or after step (f) contacting said solid support bound aminodial monomer subunit or said support bound oligomeric compound with a base to remove said base labile amino protecting group to form the solid support bound aminodial monomer subunit or support bound aligomeric compound having a free amine, and derivatizing said free amine with a group of the formula -T-L; wherein:

T is a single bond, a methylene group or a group having 15 formula:

$$\{ [CR_6R_7]_m - (R_5) - [CR_8R_9]_n - [C(R_{10})]_p - (E) - \}_q - (E) - (E)$$

where:

 $R_{10}$  is =0, =S, or =NR<sub>11</sub>;

 $R_5$  and E, independently, are a single bond, CH=CH, C=C, O, S,  $NR_{11}$ , or  $C_6-C_{14}$  aryl;

each  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$ ,  $R_9$ ,  $R_{11}$ ,  $R_{12}$  and  $R_{13}$  are, independently, H, alkyl or haloalkyl having 1 to about 10 carbon atoms, alkenyl having 2 to about 10 carbon atoms, alkynyl having 2 to about 10 carbon atoms, or aryl having 7 to about 14 carbon atoms;

m and n, independently, are 0 to 5;

p is 0 or 1;

q is 1 to about 10;

L is H, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkenyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkynyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_4-C_7$  carbocyclic alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_4-C_7$ 

carbocyclic alkenyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_4$ - $C_7$ carbocyclic alkynyl, substituted or unsubstituted Ca-C14 aryl, an ether having 2 to 10 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 oxygen or sulfur atoms, a nitrogen containing heterocycle, a sulfur containing heterocycle, an oxygen containing heterocycle, a metal coordination group, a conjugate group, halogen, hydroxyl (OH), thiol (SH), keto (C=O), carboxyl (COOH), amide (CONR<sub>12</sub>), amidine (C(=NH)NR<sub>12</sub>R<sub>13</sub>), guanidine  $(NHC (=NH) NR_{12}R_{13})$ , glutamyl  $(R_{12}OOCCH (NR_{12}R_{13}) (CH_2)_2C (=O)$ , nitrate  $(ONO_2)$ , nitro  $(NO_2)$ , nitrile (CN), trifluoromethyl 10 (CF<sub>3</sub>), trifluoromethoxy (OCF<sub>3</sub>), O-alkyl, S-alkyl, NH-alkyl, N-dialkyl, O-aralkyl, S-aralkyl, NH-aralkyl, amino (NH2), azido (N<sub>3</sub>), hydrazino (NHNH<sub>2</sub>), hydroxylamino (ONH<sub>2</sub>), sulfoxide (SO), sulfone (SO<sub>2</sub>), sulfide (S-), disulfide (S-S), silyl, a nucleosidic base, an amino acid side chain, a carbohydrate, 15 a biopharmaceutically active moiety, or group capable of hydrogen bonding where the substituent groups are selected from hydroxyl, amino, alkoxy, alcohol, benzyl, phenyl, nitro, thiol, thioalkoxy, halogen, alkyl, aryl, alkenyl, and 20 alkynyl groups;

- (h) optionally repeating steps (c) and (d) followed by step (g) to increase the length of the oligomeric compound bound to said solid support;
- (i) treating said oligomeric compound bound to 25 said solid support with acid to deprotect any protecting groups; and
  - (j) cleaving said oligomeric compound from said solid support.

### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES

Figure 1A and Figure 1B are flow schemes illustrating certain processes of the inventions.

#### DESCRIPTION OF PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

10

15

20

25

30

35

The present invention provides combinatorial libraries of phosphate linked aminodiol monomer subunits having phosphodiester, phosphorothicate, and phosphoramidate linkages. As used in the context of the present invention an aminodiol monomer subunit (monomer subunit or backbone segment) is a cyclic or acyclic compound having a protected reactive amino group either primary or secondary and two hydroxyls that can be either primary or secondary. One of the hydroxyls is protected with an acid labile protecting group and the other is in the form of the free hydroxyl or in the form of an H-phosphonate. The monomer subunits of the invention are coupled using H-phosphonate chemistry to form oligomeric compounds which are substituted with diverse functional groups.

Oligomeric compounds of the invention have reactive sites, also referred to as combinatorial sites, that may be combinatorialized with diverse functional groups. Sites that are available for combinatorializing include reactive amino groups, terminal hydroxyl groups, and H-phosphonate phosphorous groups that can be oxidized with, for example, a) carbon tetrachloride and primary or secondary amines to form a phosphoramidate, b) iodine and water to form phosphodiesters, or c) sulfur in carbon disulfide to form phosphorothioates and terminal hydroxyls. Terminal hydroxyls may also be substituted with a variety of functional groups such as nucleotides or nucleosides to give a chimeric compound or may include any of a variety of other groups such as conjugates, and reporter groups.

Functional groups may be attached directly to combinatorial sites or may include a tethering group to alter their orientation in space. The functional groups are attached to the backbone segment and phosphoramidate moiety with or without intervening tethering groups. Tethering groups, as used in the context of this invention, are bivalent or polyvalent groups that have a primary or secondary amine or

10

15

20

25

30

35

other suitable group to react with an H phosphonate backbone segment of the invention together with a second functional group capable of binding a "letter". Such tethers can be used to position "letters" in space with respect to the linear backbone of the oligomeric compound synthesized or to link letters that themselves do not include an amine group necessary to form a phosphoramidate linkage - as an inherent part of the letter. A particularly preferred group of compounds, when substituted with an appropriate amine functional group where necessary, useful as tethering groups include, but are not limited to  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkyl,  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkenyl,  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkynyl,  $C_4-C_7$  carbocylo-alkyl or alkenyl, heterocycles, an ether having 2 to 10 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 oxygen or sulfur atoms, polyalkylene glycols and  $C_7\text{--}C_{14}$ aralkyl groups. Other representative tethers useful in the practice of the invention are disclosed in United States application serial number 08/116,801, filed Sept. 3, 1993, entitled "Thiol-Derivatized Nucleosides and Oligonucleosides" and United States application serial number 117,363, filed Sept. 3, 1993, entitled "Amine-Derivatized Nucleosides and Oligonucleosides", the disclosures of which are hereby incorporated by reference.

The present invention provides for the addition of functional groups onto the backbone of the oligomeric compounds on the solid support. In contrast to previous methods, the synthesis of a large set of monomer subunits bearing various functional groups is not necessary. In one aspect the oligomeric compounds of the invention are composed of three components. The preparation of the combinatorial libraries begins with an aminodial monomer subunit attached to the solid support directly through a linker stable to the synthesis conditions, but cleavable to release the compound into solution at the end of the synthesis. Preferred linkers include esters, particularly succinic acid. Alternatively, the monomers can be coupled

10

15

20

25

30

35

to a constant moiety attached to the CPG, such as DMT ethylene glycol or a similar diol. Other attachment points to the solid support are possible, for example: nucleosides, amino acids or other groups imparting pharmacokinetic, pharmacodynamic or other desirable properties.

The backbone segments are a structurally diverse set of aminodiols which give different relative orientations of the functional groups. The backbone segment amine function, also referred to as the reactive amino group, or amino combinatorial site, is protected with a base labile protecting group and one hydroxyl is blocked with a protecting group removable with mild acid such as a dimethoxytrityl (DMT) ether. The nitrogen protecting group is first removed from the backbone segment(s) and diverse functional groups added to the reactive amino group. Methods for achieving this are described below. A second monomer subunit can then be added through H-phosphonate coupling after removal of the acid labile protecting group on the terminal end of the compound on the solid support by, for example, treating with dilute acid. The intermediate hydrogen phosphonate diester can be oxidized with, for example, a solution of  $CCl_4$  Pyridine (1:1) containing 10  $\frac{9}{5}$ (v/v) of a primary or secondary amine, resulting in the formation of a phosphoramidate linkage. Alternatively the H-phosphonate linkage can be oxidized to the phosphodiester or the phosphorothicate using standard methods and The second backbone segment can then be techniques. substituted with diverse functional groups as above. combination of backbone segments and functional groups at the backbone segment amino combinatorial sites can be introduced at any position of the oligomer and a large number of amines can be used at the oxidation step. repeating these synthetic steps an oligomeric compound is synthesized having any desired sequence of functional groups on the monomer subunits, and amidate derivatives at any

20

25

30

35

linking position. Random positions are introduced into the library by dividing the solid support into portions before the addition of the appropriate reagent. Either the monomers, the monomer substituents or the amines can be randomized. At least one position in the oligomer subsets must be fixed to allow iterative deconvolution. The library subsets are screened in the biological assay of interest. The most active subset defines the most active residue at the fixed position. Further rounds of synthesis and

- 17 -

screening are used to determine the sequence of the most active compound in the library.

One feature of the present invention is the use of a nitrogen blocking group to block the reactive amino site. Once the first aminodiol monomer subunit is attached to the solid support, the nitrogen blocking group can be removed under basic (non hydrolytic) conditions. The nitrogen is then derivatized with the diverse functional group of choice. This group can be attached to the amino combinatorial site via a variety of linkage groups: amide, sulfonamide, carbamate, urea, aminoalkane, thiocarbamate, thiourea, etc. This can be accomplished by choosing the appropriate electrophile to derivatize the nitrogen. example, carboxylic acids can be activated using peptide coupling reagents such as EDC, BOP or HATU. Other reagents which can be used include acid chlorides, -fluorides, imidazolides, -anhydrides, sulfonyl chlorides, chloroformates, isocyanates, aldehydes (under reductive alkylation conditions), alkyl halides, isothiocyanates, etc. Thus each time a functional group is desired in a library it is introduced via the appropriate coupling conditions using simple starting materials.

The aminodiol monomer subunits in the combinatorial library each bear functional groups e.g. "letters" in addition to those that form linkages. When the aminodiol monomer subunits are linked together, these functional

15

20

25

30

35

1

groups provide diverse properties ("diversity") to the resulting oligomeric compounds. The functional groups include hydrogen-bond donors and acceptors, ionic moieties, polar moieties, hydrophobic moieties, aromatic centers, and electron-donors and acceptors. Together, the properties of the individual monomers contribute to the uniqueness of the oligomeric compounds in which they are found. Thus, a library of such oligomers would have a myriad of properties, i.e., "diversity." Collectively, the properties of the individual monomers that together form an oligomeric compound contribute to the uniqueness of such oligomeric compound and impart certain characteristics thereto for interaction with cellular, enzymatic or nucleic acid target sites.

A protecting group such as a member of the trityl family preferably can be used as the acid labile protecting group of one of the two hydroxyls of the aminodiol monomer subunit. The trityl family includes at least trityl, monomethoxytrityl, dimethoxytrityl and trimethoxytrityl. The dimethoxytrityl group is preferred and can be added by reacting the primary hydroxyl group with 4,4'-dimethoxytrityl chloride. Other hydroxyl protecting groups can be used. Representative hydroxyl protecting groups are described by Beaucage, et al., Tetrahedron 1992, 48, 2223. Preferred hydroxyl protecting groups are acid-labile, such as the trityl, monomethoxytrityl, dimethoxytrityl, trimethoxytrityl, 9-phenylxanthine-9-yl (Pixyl) and 9-(p-methoxyphenyl)xanthine-9-yl (MOX).

In other aspects of the present invention the use of acid labile groups which are stable to the trichloroacetic acid treatment used for DMT removal such as BOC-type protecting groups are used. They are stable to extended TCA treatment, but are removed by trifluoroacetic acid solutions (e.g. 5% in  $CH_2Cl_2$ ). Another protecting group class which is compatible to this methodology is the allyl class. These

10

20

25

30

groups are cleaved using transition metal catalysts. These types of protecting group are particularly valuable in cases where the selective deprotection of a particular functional group is desired while the oligomer is still attached to the solid support, allowing a new reactive site to be uncovered. Additional protecting group tactics are possible: e.g. photolabile protecting groups are also compatible with this methodology.

In another aspect of the invention, nitrogen protecting groups that are stable to acid treatment and are selectively removed with base treatment are used to make reactive amino groups selectively available for substitution. Examples of such groups are the FMOC ( E. Atherton, R.C. Sheppard in The Peptides. S. Udenfriend, J. Meienhofer, Eds. Academic Press, Orlando, 1987, vol 9, p1-38), and various substituted 15 sulfonylethyl carbamates exemplified by the Nsc group (V.V. Samukov, A.N. Sabirov, P.I. Pozdnyakov, Tetrahedron Lett, 1994, 35, p7821; C.G.J. Verhart, G.I. Tesser, Rec. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas, 1987, 107, p. 621).

Heterocycles, including nitrogen heterocycles, suitable for use as functional groups include, but are not limited to, imidazole, pyrrole, pyrazole, indole, 1H-indazole, acarboline, carbazole, phenothiazine, phenoxazine, tetrazole, thiazole, oxazole, oxadiazole, benzoxazole, benzimidazole, triazole, pyrrolidine, piperidine, pyridine, quinoline, piperazine and morpholine groups.

Purines and pyrimidines suitable for use as functional groups include adenine, guanine, cytosine, uridine, and thymine, as well as other synthetic and natural nucleobases (nucleosidic bases) such as xanthine, hypoxanthine, 2aminoadenine, 6-methyl and other alkyl derivatives of adenine and guanine, 2-propyl and other alkyl derivatives of adenine and guanine, 5-halo uracil and cytosine, 6-azo uracil, cytosine and thymine, 5-uracil (pseudo uracil), 4-

15

20

25

30

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 20 -

thiouracil, 8-halo, amino, thiol, thioalkyl, hydroxyl and other 8-substituted adenines and guanines, 5-trifluoromethyl and other 5-substituted uracils and cytosines, 7-methylguanine. Further purines and pyrimidines include those disclosed in United States Patent No. 3,687,808, those disclosed in the Concise Encyclopedia Of Polymer Science And Engineering, pages 858-859, Kroschwitz, J.I., ed. John Wiley & Sons, 1990, and those disclosed by Englisch et al., Angewandte Chemie, International Edition 1991, 30, 613.

Alkyl, alkenyl, and alkynyl groups according to the invention include but are not limited to substituted and unsubstituted straight chain, branch chain, and alicyclic hydrocarbons. Further, in the context of this invention, a straight chain compound means an open chain compound, such as an aliphatic compound, including alkyl, alkenyl, or alkynyl. A branched compound, as used herein, comprises a straight chain compound, such as an alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl compound, which has further straight or branched chains attached to the carbon atoms of the straight chain. A cyclic compound, as used herein, refers to closed chain compounds, i.e. a ring of carbon atoms, such as an alicyclic or aromatic compound. The straight, branched, or cyclic compounds may be internally interrupted, as in alkoxy or heterocyclic compounds. In the context of this invention, internally interrupted means that the carbon chains may be interrupted with heteroatoms such as O, N, or S. However, if desired, the carbon chain may have no heteroatoms.

Further in the context of this specification aryl groups include but are not limited to substituted and unsubstituted aromatic hydrocarbyl groups. Aralkyl groups include but are not limited to groups having both aryl and alkyl functionalities, such as benzyl and xylyl groups. Preferred aryl and aralkyl groups include, but are not, limited to, phenyl, benzyl, xylyl, naphthyl, tolyl, pyrenyl, anthracyl, azulyl, phenethyl, cinnamyl, benzhydryl, and mesityl. These

15

20

25

30

35

can be substituted or unsubstituted.

The aliphatic and aromatic groups as noted above may be substituted or unsubstituted. In the context of this invention, substituted or unsubstituted, means that the compounds may have any one of a variety of substituents, in replacement, for example, of one or more hydrogen atoms in the compound, or may have no substituents. Typical substituents for substitution include, but are not limited to, hydroxyl, alkoxy, alcohol, benzyl, phenyl, nitro, thiol, thioalkoxy, halogen, or alkyl, aryl, alkenyl, or alkynyl groups.

Conjugate groups of the invention include intercalators, reporter molecules, polyamines, polyamides, polyethers including polyethylene glycols, and other moieties known in the art for enhancing the pharmacodynamic properties or the pharmacokinetic properties. Typical conjugate groups include PEG groups, cholesterols, phospholipids, biotin, phenanthroline, phenazine, phenanthridine, anthraquinone, acridine, fluoresceins, rhodamines, coumarins, and dyes.

Metal coordination groups according to the invention include but are not limited to hydroxamic acids, catecholamide, acetylacetone, 2,2'-bipyridine, 1,10-phenanthroline, diacetic acid, pyridine-2-carboxamide, isoalkyldiamine, thiocarbamato, oxalate, glycyl, histidyl and terpyridyl. Other metal coordination groups are known, as for example see Mellor, D.P., Chemistry of Chelation and Chelating Agents in International Encyclopedia of Pharmacology and Therapeutics, Section 70, The Chelation of Heavy Metals, Levine, W.G. Ed., Pergamon Press, Elmford, N.Y., 1979.

Solid supports according to the invention include controlled pore glass (CPG), oxalyl-controlled pore glass (see, e.g., ) or Poros --a copolymer of polystyrene/divinylbenzene.

Non-reactive functionalities used as functional groups,

20

35

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 22 -

such as groups that enhance pharmacodynamic properties, include groups that improve uptake and enhance resistance to enzymatic or chemical degradation. Non-reactive functionalities may also enhance pharmacokinetic properties.

In the context of this invention, such groups improve uptake, distribution, metabolism or excretion. Non-reactive functionalities include, but are not limited to, alkyl chains, polyamines, ethylene glycols, steroids, polyamides, aminoalkyl chains, amphipathic moieties, and conjugate groups attached to any of the nitrogenous sites for

A number of functional groups can be introduced into compounds of the invention in a blocked form and subsequently deblocked to form a final, desired compound. In general, a blocking group renders a chemical functionality of a molecule inert to specific reaction conditions and can later be removed from such functionality in a molecule without substantially damaging the remainder of the molecule (Green and Wuts, Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, 2d edition, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1991). For example, amino groups can be blocked as phthalimido groups, as 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl (FMOC) groups, and with triphenylmethylsulfenyl, t-BOC or CBZ groups. Hydroxyl

hydroxyl protecting groups are described by Beaucage et al.,

Tetrahedron 1992, 48, 2223. Preferred hydroxyl protecting

groups are acid-labile, such as the trityl,

monomethoxytrityl, dimethoxytrityl, trimethoxytrityl, 9
phenylxanthine-9-yl (Pixyl) and 9-(p-methoxyphenyl)xanthine
30 9-yl (MOX). Chemical functional groups can also be

groups can be protected as acetyl groups. Representative

9-yl (MOX). Chemical functional groups can also be "blocked" by including them in a precursor form. Thus, an azido group can be used considered as a "blocked" form of an amine since the azido group is easily converted to the amine.

Additional functional groups according to the invention

15

include but are not limited to H, alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, carbocyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl or substituted carbocyclic, or aryl or substituted aryl where the substituent groups are selected from hydroxyl, amino, alkoxy, alcohol, benzyl, phenyl, nitro, thiol, thioalkoxy, halogen, alkyl, aryl, alkenyl, or alkynyl groups; an gluether having 2 to 10 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 oxygen or sulfur atoms; a nitrogen, sulfur or oxygen containing heterocycle; a metal coordination group; a conjugate group; halogen; hydroxyl (OH); thiol (SH); keto (C=O); carboxyl (COOH); amide (CONR<sub>12</sub>), amidine  $(C(=NH)NR_{12}R_{13})$ , guanidine  $(NHC(=NH)NR_{12}R_{13})$ , glutamyl  $(R^{1}OOCCH(NR_{12}R_{13})(CH_{2})_{2}C(=0)$ , nitrate  $(ONO_{2})$ , nitro  $(NO_{2})$ , nitrile (CN), trifluoromethyl (CF<sub>3</sub>), trifluoromethoxy (OCF<sub>3</sub>), O-alkyl, S-alkyl, NH-alkyl, N-dialkyl, O-aralkyl, S-aralkyl, NH-aralkyl, amino  $(NH_2)$ , azido  $(N_3)$ , hydrazino  $(NHNH_2)$ , hydroxylamino  $(ONH_2)$ , sulfoxide (SO), sulfone  $(SO_2)$ , sulfide (S-), disulfide (S-S), silyl, a nucleosidic base, an amino 20 acid side chain, a carbohydrate, a biopharmaceutically active moiety, or group capable of hydrogen bonding where

halogen, alkyl, aryl, alkenyl, and alkynyl groups. Functional groups of the invention can be represented by 25 structure:

the substituent groups are selected from hydroxyl, amino, alkoxy, alcohol, benzyl, phenyl, nitro, thiol, thioalkoxy,

-T-L;

where T is a single bond, a methylene group or a group having formula: 30

$$\{ [CR_6R_7]_m - (R_5) - [CR_8R_9]_n - [C(R_{10})]_p - (E) - \}_q - (E) - (E)$$

where:

20

25

30

35

alkynyl groups.

 $R_{10}$  is =0, =S, or =NR<sub>11</sub>;

 $$R_{5}$$  and E, independently, are a single bond, CH=CH, C=C, O, S, NR $_{11},$  or  $C_{6}\text{--}C_{14}$  aryl;

each  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$ ,  $R_9$ ,  $R_{11}$ ,  $R_{12}$  and  $R_{13}$  are,

independently, H, alkyl or haloalkyl having 1 to about 10 carbon atoms, alkenyl having 2 to about 10 carbon atoms, alkynyl having 2 to about 10 carbon atoms, or aryl having 7 to about 14 carbon atoms;

m and n, independently, are 0 to 5;

10 p is 0 or 1;

q is 1 to about 10;

L is H, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkenyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2$ - $C_{10}$  alkynyl, substituted or unsubstituted C<sub>4</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> carbocyclic alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>7</sub> carbocyclic alkenyl, substituted or unsubstituted C4-C7 carbocyclic alkynyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_{\epsilon}$ - $C_{14}$  aryl, an ether having 2 to 10 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 oxygen or sulfur atoms, a nitrogen containing heterocycle, a sulfur containing heterocycle, an oxygen containing heterocycle, a metal coordination group, a conjugate group, halogen, hydroxyl (OH), thiol (SH), keto (C=O), carboxyl (COOH), 'amide (CONR<sub>12</sub>), amidine (C(=NH)NR<sub>12</sub>R<sub>13</sub>), guanidine  $(NHC (=NH) NR_{12}R_{13})$ , glutamyl  $(R_{12}OOCCH (NR_{12}R_{13}) (CH_2)_2C (=O)$ , nitrate  $(ONO_2)$ , nitro  $(NO_2)$ , nitrile (CN), trifluoromethyl (CF<sub>3</sub>), trifluoromethoxy (OCF<sub>3</sub>), O-alkyl, S-alkyl, NH-alkyl, N-dialkyl, O-aralkyl, S-aralkyl, NH-aralkyl, amino (NH<sub>2</sub>), azido (N<sub>3</sub>), hydrazino (NHNH<sub>2</sub>), hydroxylamino (ONH<sub>2</sub>), sulfoxide (SO), sulfone  $(SO_2)$ , sulfide (S-), disulfide (S-S), silyl, a nucleosidic base, an amino acid side chain, a carbohydrate, a biopharmaceutically active moiety, or group capable of hydrogen bonding where the substituent groups are selected from hydroxyl, amino, alkoxy, alcohol, benzyl, phenyl, nitro, thiol, thioalkoxy, halogen, alkyl, aryl, alkenyl, and

10

15

20

25

30

35

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 25 -

As used in this specification, a "functional" group is one that, when attached to a parent molecule, imparts to that molecule a particular and unique characteristic. contributes diversity to the parent molecule by rendering the parent molecule different in some way from what it was before attachment of the group. Several chemical functional groups can be attached to a particular molecule and when considered together, the sum total of their properties will impart global diversity characteristics to the parent molecule. Each set of combinations of chemical functional groups on a particular molecule will modify the parent such that the parent molecule having each particular combinations of groups will be different from the parent molecule having any of the other combinations of groups. When all of the combinations of the groups on the parent are considered, a library of compounds will be formed that include all of the possible combinations of groups.

Oligomeric compounds of the invention can be synthesized with both the position and the choice of the chemical functional groups predetermined, or allowed to be selected by combinatorial selection. In the context of this invention, "combinatorial" does not mean arbitrary, haphazard or indiscriminate. In the context of this invention, "combinatorial" is construed to mean that within the totality of the population of oligomeric compounds that can be formed using a particular set of functional groups and a particular location of combinatorial sites within the oligomeric compound, there will be sub-populations of each of the possible species. Thus, each of the different combinations of a) choice of functional group and b) positioning of the functional groups will be represented.

"Combinatorial" is distinct from "random." To illustrate the distinction, if all or nearly all possible combinations are present in the total molecular population, then it is a combinatorial population of molecules. If,

25

30

35

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 26 -

however, only one or a small number of molecules from that total population is selected, then the selected molecule or molecules might be randomly selected if it is picked at whim or will from the total population. When the totality of the 5 population is considered, all species are present and it is not a random population. If a systematic selection was made until the totality of the population was exhausted, then all of the species would eventually be selected, however, the order of selection might be random. Thus, in certain 10 preferred embodiments, a pre-ordered selection and/or location of chemical functional groups will be present. further preferred embodiments, a combinatorialized population of all possible combinations and ordering of the chemical functional groups is present. In even further 15 preferred embodiments, the sequence is modulated between fixed and combinatorial. This is especially useful, as for example, in certain deconvolution strategies.

"Deconvolution" is construed to mean taking the totality of a population and systematically working through that population to establish the identity of a particular memeber, selected members, or all members of the population. In deconvoluting a combinatorial library of compounds, systematic selection is practiced until an individual oligomeric compound or a group of individual oligomeric compounds having a particular characteristic, as for instance being an active species in a specific functional assay, is identified.

Conjugate groups can also be used as functional groups in the present invention. Conjugate groups include intercalators, reporter molecules, polyamines, polyamides, polyethylene glycols, polyethers, groups that enhance the pharmacodynamic properties of oligomers, and groups that enhance the pharmacokinetic properties of oligomers. Typical conjugates groups include cholesterols, phospholipids, biotin, phenanthroline, phenazine,

phenanthridine, anthraquinone, acridine, fluoresceins, rhodamines, coumarins, and dyes. Groups that enhance the pharmacodynamic properties, in the context of this invention, include groups that improve oligomer uptake, 5 enhance oligomer resistance to degradation, and/or strengthen sequence-specific hybridization with RNA or protein targets. Groups that enhance the pharmacokinetic properties, in the context of this invention, include groups that improve compound uptake, distribution, metabolism or 10 excretion. Representative conjugate groups are disclosed in International Patent Application PCT/US92/09196, filed October 23, 1992, United States Patent Application Serial No. 116,801, filed September 3, 1993, and United States Patent No. 5,218,105. Each of the foregoing is commonly 15 assigned with this application. The entire disclosure of each is incorporated herein by reference.

Amines include amines of all of the above alkyl, alkenyl and aryl groups including primary and secondary amines and "masked amines" such as phthalimide. Amines of this invention are also meant to include polyalkylamino compounds and aminoalkylamines such as aminopropylamines and further heterocycloalkylamines, such as imidazol-1, 2, or 4-yl-propylamine.

Amino groups amenable to the present invention have the 25 formula  $N(Y_0)\,T_0$ , wherein:

 $Y_0$  is H, or  $[Q_2]_i - Z_2$ ;

 $T_0$  is  $[Q_1]_k-Z_1$ , or together  $Y_0$  and  $T_0$  are joined in a nitrogen heterocycle;

 $Q_1$  and  $Q_2$  independently, are  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkyl,  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkenyl, 30  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkynyl,  $C_4-C_7$  carbocylo alkyl or alkenyl, a heterocycle, an ether having 2 to 10 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 oxygen or sulfur atoms, a polyalkyl glycol, or  $C_7-C_{14}$  aralkyl;

j and k independently, are 0 or 1;

 $Z_1$  and  $Z_2$  independently are H,  $C_1-C_2$  alkyl,  $C_2-C_{20}$  35 alkenyl,  $C_2-C_{20}$  alkynyl,  $C_6-C_{14}$  aryl,  $C_7-C_{15}$  aralkyl, halogen,

5

10

30

35

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 28 -

CH=O,  $OR_{12}$ ,  $SR_{12}$ ,  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , C (=NH)  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , CH ( $NR_{12}R_{13}$ ), NHC (=NH)  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , CH ( $NH_2$ ) C (=O) OH, C (=O)  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , C (=O)  $OR_{12}$ , a metal coordination group, a reporter group, a nitrogen-containing heterocycle, a purine, a pyrimidine, a phosphate group, a polyether group, or a polyethylene glycol group.

In some preferred embodiments, the oligomeric compounds of the invention are from 2 to about 30 aminodiol monomers in length. More preferred embodiments have from 2 to about 15 aminodiol monomers, and especially preferred embodiments have from 2 to about 6 aminodiol monomers.

To synthesize a combinatorial library having a large degree of chemical diversity is an important aspect of the present invention. Chemical diversity is introduced at one level by varying the nature of the phosphorus linkage.

- Phosphorus linkages amenable to the present invention include phosphodiester (OPO), phosphorothicate (OPS), and phosphoramidate (OPN). The desired combinatorial library can be prepared with a single type of phosphorus linkage, or with different linkages at each position of the oligomer.
- For example, a single OPS linkage can be selectively introduced at any position in a OPO oligomer. In fact, all possible combinations of OPO, OPS, and OPN linkages can be introduced selectively into the oligomeric compounds. The presence or absence of a type of linkage at a particular position in an oligomer will have profound effects on the properties of the molecule.

In the case of phosphoramidate linked libraries, a further level of diversity is possible by oxidizing the H-phosphonate diester linkage with a solution such as CCl<sub>4</sub> Pyridine (1:1) containing 10 % (v/v) of a primary or secondary amine, resulting in the formation of a phosphoramidate linkage. Any of the H-phosphonate monomer subunits can be introduced at any position of the oligomer and a large number of amines can be used at the oxidation step. Thus it is possible to introduce a wide variety of

Ti.

5

10

15

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 29 -

amines into the oligomeric compound at H-phosphonate linkages by oxidation to the OPN linkage. It is possible to have the same amine substituents at each OPN linkage or a different amine at each position. In the preparation of a combinatorial library from a set of monomer subunits, amines and function groups, all possible combinations are synthesized simultaneously.

Chemical diversity can be generated at several levels in SURF™ libraries. We have described below the preparation of a number of monomer subunits. These monomers have been prepared to explore two aspects of chemical diversity: first a wide number of functional groups are available, covering a range of chemical properties. Second, these functional groups can be attached directly to combinatorial sites or via tethering groups to combinatorial sites. Many different tethering groups are commercially available and are amenable to the present invention. The use of tethering groups alters the presentation of functional groups, in space in different ways, allowing variable flexibility.

20 Hydrogen phosphonate chemistry allows additional chemical modifications to be introduced into oligomeric compounds. Oligonucleotide phosphodiesters and phosphorothioates have been prepared using this approach, (see Froehler, B. C., Matteucci, M. D. Tetrahedron Lett. 1986, 25 27, 469-472), as well as oligonucleotide phosphoramidates (see Froehler, B. C. Tetrahedron Lett. 1986, 27, 5575-5579. Letsinger, R. L., Singman, C. N., Histand, G., Salunkhe, M. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 1988, 110, 4470-4471. The synthesis of oligomeric compounds containing both phosphodiesters and 30 phosphoramidates was reported, as well as the use of phosphoramidite chemistry in conjunction with the synthesis of phosphoramidates (see Jung, P. M., Histand, G., Letsinger, R. L. Nucleosides & Nucleotides, 1994, 13, 1597-1605). In this latter work, alternating phosphodiester and phosphoramidate oligomeric compounds were prepared by

m

10

15

20

25

30

35

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 30 -

coupling phosphoramidites and H-Phosphonates to the growing oligomer, followed by the appropriate oxidation step. In general, however, all the examples described thus far have incorporated the same amine substitution at all phosphoramidate linkages in the oligomer. These studies have shown the feasibility of using the phosphoramidate bond as an additional site for the incorporation of diverse functional groups.

A wide variety of amines can be used in the oxidative step, and the monomers of the present invention support the necessary chemistry. Thus, for the preparation of combinatorial libraries incorporating phosphoramidate linkages, the monomer subunits of the present invention used as the corresponding H-Phosphonate monoesters. In one aspect of the present invention this is accomplished using PCl, and imidazole as the phosphitylating reagent (see Garegg, P. J., Regberg, T., Stawinski, J., Strömberg, R. Chem. Scr. 1986, 26, 59-62). These H-phosphonates monomer subunits may be oligomerized on solid support by activation with pivaloyl chloride, adamantoyl chloride or other appropriate activating agent. The intermediate H-Phosphonate diesters are oxidized to the phosphate diesters in high yields using iodine in aqueous pyridine. This allowed for the comparison of the coupling efficiency of the H-phosphonate and phosphoramidite methods. Essentially the same coupling efficiency is achieved with both methodologies. phosphonate diesters are converted to phosphoramidates by the use of a 10% solution of the appropriate amine in pyridine/CCl<sub>4</sub> (1:1). Under these conditions, a H-phosphonate diester is oxidized to a phosphoryl chloride via an Arbuzov reaction, followed by displacement of the chloride by a primary or secondary amine. The second step has proven to be quite general, with a wide variety of amines giving satisfactory yields. Moreover, the yield of phosphoramidate is comparable to the yield of phosphodiester.

D

5

10

15

20

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 31 -

Several types of libraries are available through this methodology. The simplest kind is a library made from a set of monomer subunits of the present invention, and a set of 4 to 16 or more functional groups, of 2 to 10 or more monomer subunits in length, which is substituted at phosphorus with a single amine. These libraries are prepared by split bead synthesis, following the H-phosphonate synthesis protocol rather than phosphoramidite chemistry.

In one aspect of the present invention, intermediate H-phosphonate diesters are left intact until the final step. At that point the oligomer library pools are oxidized with CCl<sub>4</sub>/Pyridine containing 10% of the appropriate primary or secondary amine. The library therefore is composed of all possible sequences of the monomers, separated into subsets unique at a fixed position, linked together by a constant phosphoramidate linkage. It should be evident that the final properties of the library will be determined by the choice of amine used in the oxidation step. Thus, water solubility, pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of the library components can be modulated by the choice of amine.

It is also possible to prepare oligomer libraries with mixed linkages by having an intermediate oxidation step (see Gryaznov, S. M., Sokolova, N. I. Tetrahedron Lett. 1990, 31, 3205-3208; Gryaznov, S. M., Potapov, V. K. Tetrahedron Lett. 1991, 32, 3715-3718; Farooqui, F., Sarin, P. S., Sun, 25 Letsinger, R. L. Bioconjugate Chem., 1991, 2, 422-D., Iso, Y., Yoneda, F., Ikeda, H., Tanaka, K., Fuji, K. Tetrahedron Lett. 1992, 33, 503-506). Thus, a portion of the oligomer library is synthesized by H-phosphonate chemistry, which can be oxidized with (R2NH, CCl4/Py or S8, 30  $CS_2/TEA$  or  $H_2O$ ,  $CCl_4/Py$ ), and a second portion of the library synthesized and oxidized with a second set of reagents. This creates a chimeric library, where a segment of the random oligomeric compounds in each subset has a different linkage

1.5

35

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 32 -

than the rest of the molecule.

By extension of this methodology, it is possible to incorporate a different linkage at each position of the oligomer library by having a different oxidation step after each monomer subunit coupling. The linkage can be combinatorialized by performing a separate oxidation on a portion of the H-phosphonate diester-linked solid support, followed by pooling of the subsets in the same way that the monomer subunit positions are randomized. Thus, each monomer and the linkage between them can be randomized by a split synthesis strategy.

One advantage of the present invention is that the simple design of monomer subunits of the inventions allows for combining rational drug design with screen mechanisms for thousands of compounds. This is achieved by using the monomer subunits of the invention in a combinatorial techniques such as the SURF $^{\text{TM}}$  strategies.

In one preferred embodiment, functional groups appended to oligomeric compounds of the invention are selected for their potential to interact with, and preferably inhibit, 20 the enzyme  $PLA_2$ . Thus, the oligomeric compounds of the invention can be used for topical and/or systematic treatment of inflammatory diseases including atopic dermatitis and inflammatory bowel disease. In selecting the functional groups, advantage can be taken of PLA: 's 25 preference for anionic vesicles over zwitterionic vesicles. In selecting the backbone segments that bear these functional groups, further advantage can be taken of fact that the natural substrate of  $PLA_2$  contains a phosphate group. Therefore, phosphodiester or phosphorothioate and 30 other phosphate linked oligomeric compounds may be selected, providing a negatively charged compound for binding with the positively charged interfacial binding site of PLA:

Compounds of the invention also include aromatic functional groups to facilitate binding to the cleft of the

15

20

25

30

PLA<sub>2</sub> enzyme. (see, Oinuma, et al., J. Med. Chem. 1991, 34, 2260; Marki, et al., Agents Actions 1993, 38, 202; and Tanaka, et al., J. Antibiotics 1992, 45, 1071). Benzyl and 4-hexylbenzyl groups are preferred aromatic groups. The compounds of the invention can further include hydrophobic functional groups such as tetraethylene glycol groups. Since the PLA<sub>2</sub> enzyme has a hydrophobic channel, hydrophobicity is believed to be an important property of inhibitors of the enzyme.

In certain embodiments of the invention, aminodiol monomer subunits are incorporated into libraries of oligomeric compounds and increasingly less complex subsets of oligomeric compounds are identified in combinatorial screening techniques such as the above described SURF<sup>TM</sup> technique by successive rounds of screens. The PLA<sub>2</sub> assay can be effected using a combinatorial screening strategy such as the SURF<sup>TM</sup> strategy. For this assay, the libraries of oligomeric compounds are screened for inhibition of human type II PLA<sub>2</sub> enzymatic activity. Typically, these libraries contain about 100 to 100,000 different compounds. Successive iterations of the SURF<sup>TM</sup> technique is effected to select unique oligomeric compounds from the library. The libraries additionally can be screened in other *in vitro* assays to determine further mechanisms of inhibition.

Upon identification of oligomeric compounds in a first phase of screening, further modifications can be made to the contents of the libraries of oligomeric compounds. For example, if a first iteration of screening results in an active compound that contains a benzyl group, then in subsequent iterations of the screen this aromatic residue can then be varied using substituted benzyl groups. In this way, structural activity is identified in a stepwise manner to define potent inhibitors of the enzymatic activity.

To maximize the identification of a tight binding oligo-

25

30

meric inhibitor of  $PLA_2$  via a combinatorial approach, an array of functional groups typically are included in a randomized library.

- 34 -

Aminodiol monomer subunits can be linked with one another to form homopolymeric structures or they can be linked with nucleotides and/or other moieties to form chimeric structures. For example, chimeric structures can be formed that include one or more regions or "stretches" of

the monomer subunits of the invention joined to one or more regions or "stretches" of naturally occurring or synthetic oligonucleotides or to other synthetic or natural oligomeric compounds such as peptides, peptoids, peptide nucleic acids, oligo and/or polysaccharides. Further, oligomeric compounds of the invention can be incorporated into chimeric

structures along with the compounds disclosed in the patent application entitled "Monomeric Diols And Phosphate Linked Oligomeric compounds Formed Therefrom," Serial No.

08/179,970 filed January 11, 1994; which is the parent case for PCT/US95/0049, filed January 11, 1995; and the patent

application entitled "Oligonucleotide Mimics Having Nitrogen-Containing Linkages," Serial No. 08/180,124, filed January 11, 1994; which is the parent case for PCT Application bearing attorney docket ISIS-1852, filed January 11, 1995. The foregoing patent applications are commonly assigned, and are incorporated herein by reference.

In one aspect of the invention, a combinatorial library of oligomeric compounds is synthesized by first attaching a plurality of aminodiol monomer subunits, each having structure I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, or XI, below, to a solid support.

The first aminodiol monomer subunits have base labile protecting groups for  $R_1$  and a hydrogen or an alkyl group for  $R_2$ , if present. One of  $R_3$  and  $R_4$  is an acid labile protecting group and the other is hydrogen e.g. a free hydroxyl. The free hydroxyl is reacted with a group on the solid support to effect the attachment of the aminodiol monomer subunit to the solid support. Alternatively other bifunctional groups such as ethylene glycol are attached to the solid support with many such compounds known in the art and many commercially available. Solid supports are also available with linking groups previously attached, ready for use

15

25

- 36 -

without a derivatization step.

The base labile protecting group on the reactive amino group is removed by contacting with a base such as 10% piperidine in DMF or DBU (diazabicycloundecene) in pyridine, and a substituted carboxylic acid or another electrophilic reagent (acid chloride, sulfonyl chloride, etc.) is then covalently linked to the backbone segment amino combinatorial site using standard coupling methods (for examples see Bodansky, M., Principles of Peptide Synthesis, 1984, Springer-Verlag, Berlin). Carbamates can be obtained by the treatment of the amine with an appropriate alkyl or aryl chloroformate. Carbamates can be obtained by the treatment of the amine with an appropriate alkyl or aryl chloroformate, in the presence of a catalyst such as pyridine. A urea or thiourea can be formed by reacting the backbone segment amino combinatorial site with an isocyanate or isothiocyanate, or by treatment with carbonyl diimidazole followed by a second amine, in the presence of base. Sulfonamides can be prepared from the amine by the reaction with a sulfonyl chloride in the presence of a base. nitrogen can be alkylated by treatment with a halide such as the illustrative halides (benzyl bromide, 3-methylbenzyl bromide, 3-methoxybenzyl bromide or 3-nitrobenzyl bromide) used in the examples below. A wide spectrum of halides can be used for this purpose. Additionally, amino compounds can be functionalized by reaction with an aldehyde or ketone forming a Schiff base. The Schiff base is then reduced in the presence of a reducing agent such as NaCNBH3.

Functional groups that require protection are derivatized using acid labile protecting groups which are 30 The acid labile hydroxyl protecting group is stable to TCA. removed by treating with an acid (3% TCA in dichloromethane) and the resulting free hydroxyl is reacted with a second aminodiol monomer subunit H-phosphonate having a base labile protecting group for R<sub>1</sub> and a hydrogen or an alkyl group for 35

15

20

25

30

35

 $R_2$ , if present. One of  $R_3$  and  $R_4$  is an acid labile protecting group and the other is an activated phosphite. The free hydroxyl of the first monomer subunit on the solid support is reacted with the activated phosphite of the second monomer subunit to form a phosphite linkage thereby increasing the length of the growing oligomeric compound by one monomer subunit.

The phosphite linkage is oxidized to a phosphoramidate using a 10% solution of a primary or secondary amine in  $CCl_4/pyridine$ . The base labile protecting group on the second monomer subunit is then removed with piperidine as above. The resulting amino group is further reacted with an activated functional group. If desired, additional monomer subunits can be added by repeating the synthetic steps described above.

Monomer subunits of the invention can be used to prepare oligomeric compounds having either preselected sequences or sequences determined via combinatorial strategies. One useful combinatorial strategy is the above-noted SURF<sup>TM</sup> strategy, which is disclosed and claimed in United States Patent Application Serial No. 749,000, filed Aug. 23, 1991, and PCT Application US92/07121, filed Aug. 21, 1992, both of which are commonly assigned with this application. The entire disclosure of these applications are herein incorporated by reference.

The following is an example of the methods used for the synthesis of a simple combinatorial library. The variable parameters which can be controlled are the following: the backbone segments, the functional groups attached to the backbone segment amino combinatorial site, the amines attached at the phosphoramidate linkage, and the length of the oligomer. In the example described here a very simple library composed of only 32 molecules will be described. This library is prepared by using two different backbone segments, A and B, two carboxylic acids X and Y, and two

amines, P and Q. 1) One begins by weighing equal amounts of solid supports derivatized with A and B. The two solid supports are mixed together by suspending the gels in DMF/dichloromethane (1:1) or other solvent, and mixing gently. If more than two backbone segments are used in the library, all the different supports are mixed together at this stage. The mixture of supports is then treated with piperidine in DMF to remove the N-protecting group from both supports. 2) The mixture is separated into a number of equal portions corresponding to the number of reagents to be 10 added in the next step, in this case two. To the first mixture is added activated carboxylic acid X, to the is added activated Y. Once the reaction is complete, the solid supports are mixed as above to give an equimolar mixture of all four possible combinations. The mixture is then treated 15 with trichloroacetic acid to remove the DMT protecting groups on the monomer subunits and provide a free OH group. 3) The mixture is separated into a number of equal portions corresponding to the number of monomer subunits to be added, in this case two. To each mixture a monomer subunit H-20 phosphonate is then coupled, the solid supports are again mixed, and the support is again divided into equal portions corresponding to the number of amines to be added, in this case two. 4) At this stage all eight possible combinations are present. Each portion is treated separately with a 25 solution an amine, P or Q in CCl4/Pyridine. The portions are then pooled, treated with piperidine in DMF and split. Each mixture of 16 compounds on solid support treated with an activated carboxylic acid, X and Y. The result is two unique pools of 16 compounds each, which can then be 30 deprotected to remove the terminal DMT group and any protecting groups on the functionalities, and cleaved from the solid support. It is also possible to add further combinatorial sites by coupling additional monomer subunits and extending the library molecules. We have used the 35

following nomenclature to describe mixtures of compounds in a concise manner: X represents a fixed position, that is the backbone segment or functional group on the amino combinatorial site at that position is unique and serves to define the pool composition. N represents an equimolar mixture of all possible structures at a particular position. The subscript defines the synthetic step in the library synthesis. In the above example the library made was  $X_5N_4N_3N_2N_1$ , where  $X_5$  = X or Y,  $N_4$  is an equal mixture of P and Q,  $N_3$  = A and B,  $N_2$  = X and Y, and  $N_1$  = A and B. In this case 10 the fixed position is the last one, but similar methods can be used to fix any position in the library independently. It is also possible to have a single structure or functionality at any position. Once the most active moiety at position 5 is determined for a particular assay e.g. A, 15 then two additional pools are synthesized having this residue in all cases. A second position is fixed and the remainder randomized: for example  $A_5X_4N_3N_2N_1$ , where  $N_{1-3}$  are as above and  $X_4$  is either P or Q. A unique structure is determined after 5 rounds of synthesis and screening. 20 advantage is uncovered when more than two possible components are used in each position: If ten different components are available at each position then 100,000 unique structures exist, yet only 5 rounds of synthesis and screening are necessary. 25

Illustrative of the SURFTM strategy is a 2'-O-methyl oligonucleotide library (see, Ecker et. al., ibid.) shown in Table I, below. Table I describes the selection of a 2'-O-methyl oligonucleotide for binding to an RNA hairpin. The  $K_D$ 's, i.e., the binding constants, were determined by gel shift. "X" is used to indicate the position being varied and underlining is used to indicate positions that become fixed during successive iterations of the SURFTM strategy.

30

K<sub>D</sub> (mM)

	Subsets	X=A	X=C	X=G	X=T
5	Round 1 NNNNXNNNN	22	10	>100	>100
	Round 2 NNNN <u>C</u> NXNN	>10	<u>4</u>	>10	>10
	Round 3 NNXN <u>C</u> N <u>C</u> NN	>10	0.5	>10	>10
10	Round 4 NN <u>C</u> X <u>C</u> N <u>C</u> NN	>10	0.15	>10	>10
	Round 5 NN <u>CCC</u> X <u>C</u> NN	0.08	>1	0.4	>1
15	Round 6 NN <u>CCCAC</u> XN	0.05	>0.5	0.08	>0.5
	Round 7 NX <u>CCCACA</u> N	>0.1	>0.1	0.03	>0.1
	Round 8 NGCCCACAX	0.05	0.02	0.05	0.04
20	Round 9 XGCCCACAC	0.03	0.05	0.02	0.01

One aspect of the present invention is the inclusion of monomer subunits of the invention in the above-described SURF™ strategy. The SURF™ strategy is equally applicable to libraries of chemical compounds of the present invention in a completely parallel manner. Many other assays are also used as the selection criteria to deduce a winning sequence with the highest activity. The functional groups appended to the reactive amino groups of the oligomeric compounds of the invention can be of various structures that impart particular interactive properties to the oligomeric compounds. These chemical functional groups can effect interactions of at least the following types: hydrogen-bond donors and acceptors, ionic, polar, hydrophobic, aromatic,

10

15

20

25

electron donors and acceptors, pi bond stacking or metal binding. As a result of such interactions, the oligomeric compounds of the invention have unique properties effecting the overall global shape, the conformational space, electron density, dipole moment and ability of the compound to interact with enzyme pockets and other binding sites and other similar properties.

To detect an active sequence generated via a combinatorial technique, the concentration of the active molecule is selected to be of sufficiently great that the molecule can be detected within the sensitivity of the chosen assay. As will be recognized, the number of unique structures within a subset produced via a combinatorial technique depends on the length of the oligomer and the number of different functionalities employed. The number of structures is given by the product of the number components at each variable position. This is illustrated in Table II. Table II also indicates the concentration of each sequence when the subset concentration is 100 uM, a typical high-test concentration. We have found that the complexity of the library can be based upon an estimate of the expected  $IC_{59}$ (i.e., a concentration at which 50% of enzyme activity is inhibited) that is desirable in a final oligomeric compound. For an expected  $IC_{50}$  of 100 nM, the complexities shown in Table II are acceptable, that is, the libraries shown in Table II have complexities that would allow detection of a unique sequence with an  $IC_{50}$  of about 100 nM or less.

TABLE II Complexity of Libraries

		Sequences nM Ea	ach	Sequence		
30	Variable Positions (Mer)					Subset

5 Components

20

25

30

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

_	42	_
---	----	---

	5-mer	625	160
	6 Components 4-mer 5-mer	216 1,296	463 77
5	7 Components 4-mer	343	291
	8 Components 4-mer	512	195
10	10 Components 4-mer	1,000	100

The functional groups or components can also be referred to as "letters." The use of such terminology reflects the fact that the different functional groups on the compounds of the invention are positioned in sequences (either predetermined or by random selection) much like letters of the alphabet, hence the term "letter." These letters can be "reactive" or "non-reactive." By "reactive," it is meant that they will interact with a target molecule in some manner (that need not but can be predefined). By nonreactive," it is meant that they are not designed to primarily interact with a target molecule, and in fact while they may interact with the target molecule, the primary purpose of the non-reactive moieties are to impart other properties to the molecule such as, but not necessarily limited to, effecting up-take, distribution, metabolism or identification.

A further advantage of this invention is the ability to synthesize oligomeric compounds that, in addition to or in place of variability in the sequences of the diverse functional groups, have an asymmetric sequence of monomer subunits. Stated otherwise, the monomer subunits can also vary within the oligomeric compounds. This is easily accomplished by using different aminodiol monomer subunits

10

15

20

that eventually become the backbone of the oligomeric compounds.

The oligomeric compounds of the invention can be used in diagnostics, therapeutics and as research reagents and kits. They can be used in pharmaceutical compositions by including a suitable pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier. In preferred embodiments, the compounds of the invention act as inhibitors of enzymes such as phospholipase  $A_2$ ; as inhibitors of pathogens such as virus, mycobacterium, bacteria (gram negative and gram positive), protozoa and parasites; as inhibitors of ligand-receptor interactions such as PDGF (platelet derived growth factor),  $LTB_4$ (leukotriene  $B_4$ ), IL-6 and complement  $C5_A$ ; as inhibitors of protein/protein interactions including transcription factors such as p50 (NF\_B protein) and fos/jun; for the inhibition of cell-based interactions including ICAM induction (using inducers such as IL1- $\beta$ , TNF and LPS) and as herbicides and insecticides. In other preferred embodiments, the compounds of the invention are used as diagnostic reagents for each of the above noted biological entities, and as reagents in assays and as probes. In other preferred embodiments, the compounds of the invention are used to chelate heavy metals and as imaging agents.

The functional groups can be selected based on chain
length, i.e. short versus long, based on the use of a ring
versus a linear group, use of an aromatic versus aliphatic
group, use of a functionalized group versus a nonfunctionalized group, to mention only a few of the wide
variety of chemical functional groups available. Indeed
simply varying functional moieties, e.g. acid, alcohol,
aldehyde, amide, amine, amidine, azo, azoxy, double bond,
ether, ethylene oxide, guanidine, halide, haloalkyl,
hydrazine, hydroxylamine, ketone, mercaptan, nitrate,
nitrile, nitro, nitroso, quaternary nitrogen, sulfide,
sulfone, sulfoxide, triple bond, urea, etc. on a single

10

backbone segment amino combinatorial site, e.g. a simple alkyl group, yields a vast array of diversity functions. When this is expanded to include placement of such varied functional moieties on a broad platform of backbones, e.g. a series of alkyl compounds, a series of aryl compounds, a series of alicyclic compounds, etc., the potential for a vast array of chemical functional groups is apparent. Other chemical functional groups include alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alicyclic and substituted alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alicyclic; aryl and substituted aryl; aralkyl, substituted aralkyl, heterocycles, nucleobases such as pyrimidines and purines, metal chelating groups and moieties as found in the  $\alpha$ -position of amino acids, such as those shown below:

 $CH_3-$ 15  $HO-CH_2 C_{\epsilon}H_5-CH_2 HO-C_{\epsilon}H_4-CH_2-$ 

$$HN$$
  $CH_2$ 

 $CH_3-CH_2-S-CH_2-CH_2-$ 

10

15

20

25

30

 $HO_{1}C-CH(NH_{2})-CH_{2}-S-S-CH_{2}-CH_{3}-CH_{2}-CH_{3}-CH_{2}-CH_{3}-S-CH_{2}-CH_{2}-CH_{3}-CH_$ 

The various combination of reactions that can be effected utilizing the teaching of this invention can be further demonstrate by use of a logical flow scheme. This flow scheme is set forth in Figures 1A and 1B.

Referring to the figures, at the start 10 of the synthesis, an aminodiol monomer subunit or group of aminodiol monomer subunits is/are selected. The selected monomer or monomers are processed at process step 12 wherein the aminodiol monomer subunit or subunits is/are attached to a solid support as per Examples 26, 30, 35, 45, 46, 57, 55, and 61, set forth below. The aminodiol monomer subunit may be attached to the solid support via a H-phosphonate diester linkage, through a succinyl linkage, or through an ethyleneglycol linkage. Many other types of linkages are known in the art and are amenable to the present invention. A group of aminodiol monomer subunits may be advantageously attached at this step by utilizing a split bead synthesis. process steps effected at process step 12 can be otherwise characterized as a selecting and attaching procedure depicted by box 102.

From the procedure box 102, the path of the flow scheme intersects convergent point 14. Convergent point 14 represents the point in the iterative process of the invention wherein growing oligomeric compounds from later steps are reintroduced via this iterative process to undergo further oxidation, amine group functionalization and elongation as discussed below.

Downstream of the convergent point 14, the processes of the invention further include an oxidization step effected via procedures included in the general oxidization procedure depicted by box 104. At decision block 16, within the WO 96/40672

10

20

30

oxidization procedure generally depicted at box 104, the product of process step 12 (or the growing oligomeric compounds introduced at convergent point 14) is (are) either converted by oxidation from  $P^{\text{III}}$  to  $P^{\text{V}}$  compounds via the positive branch of this step or the  $P^{\text{III}}$  phosphite linkages are not oxidized and the compounds are maintained with  $P^{\mathrm{III}}$ linkages and are taken to the next decision step via the negative branch of decision block 16 leading to convergent point 42. For those products of process step 12 (or the growing oligomeric compounds introduced at convergent point 14) wherein oxidization is desired during this iteration of the process (those moving along the positive branch of decision block 16), at decision block 18 they are either converted to phosphoramidates via the positive branch leading from decision block 18 or they are converted into phosphorothicates or phosphodiesters via the negative branch leading from decision block 18.

At decision block 20, growing oligomeric compounds are either oxidized to phosphodiesters at process step 24 via the positive branch of decision block 20 or they are oxidized to phosphorothicates at process step 25 via the negative branch of decision block 20. Oxidation to either the phosphorothicate or phosphodiester, as illustrated in Example 69, can be effected simultaneously on multiple positions on the same growing oligomeric compound, as for instance if the 25 negative branch was taken at decision block 16 for one or more previous iterations of the process. If there are previous unoxidized sites and if the positive branch of decision block 16 is selected during the current iteration, multiple monomeric units are oxidized simultaneously. resulting phosphodiesters and phosphorothioates converge at convergent point 38 and from there lead to convergent point 40.

Following the positive branch from decision block 18, growing oligomeric compounds at decision block 22 can be 35

converted to phosphoramidates by one of three process steps.

First, the decision to effect substitution using a single amine is effected at decision block 22. Growing oligomeric compounds following the positive branch from decision block 22 are converted at process step 26 using a single amine in 5 solution as illustrated in Example 67, to give phosphoramidate linkages having uniform substituents. Growing oligomeric compounds following the negative branch from decision block 22 are combinatorialzed by one of two processes. Growing oligomeric compounds following the 10 negative branch from the competitive combinatorialzation decision block 28 are combinatorialzed at process step 30 by a split bead synthesis. Growing oligomeric compounds following the positive branch of decision block 28 are combinatorialized at process step 32 using a mixture of 15 amines as illustrated in Example 67 Method B.

Growing oligomeric compounds that may have been oxidized (via the positive branch of decision block 16) or may not have been oxidized (via the negative branch of decision block 16) converge at convergent point 42 within the general oxidization procedure box 106. From convergent point 42 the process is continued on Figure 1B via connector point 44 that connects Figure 1A and Figure 1B. A further connector point, point 46, leads back from Figure 1B to Figure 1A.

At decision block 48 within the generalized functionalization procedure depicted by box 106, following the positive branch of decision block 48, the growing oligomeric compounds, at process step 50, are deblocked to expose a free amino site on the growing oligomeric compound. This free amino site is now available for functionalization.

Alternatively, following the negative branch from decision block 48, amino deblocking and functionalization is bypassed. Following the negative branch of decision block 48, the amine protecting groups are maintained and the growing oligomeric compound is taken directly to convergent point 66.

25

30

35

10

15

20

25

30

35

If in one or more earlier iterations of the process, the negative branch of decision block 48 was selected, there will be multiple amino sites that now are protected and can be deblocked for functionalization. Thus functionalization can be effected at one or at more than one site during any one iteration of the functionalization procedure generally depicted by box 106.

Following the positive branch of the functionalization procedure decision block 48, after deblocking at process step 50, several alternatives are available for functionalization of the resulting free amino site(s). At decision block 52, functionalization with a single functional group or with multiple functional groups is queried. Following the positive branch from decision block 52, functionalization is effected with a single functional group. This functionalization can be performed on a single position or, as noted above, if the functionalization procedure was bypassed in prior iterations of the process, multiple amino positions in a growing oligomeric compound or combinatorial library of such compounds can be functionalized simultaneously. The negative branch of decision block 52 leads to decision block 56 where the deprotected amino site on the growing oligomeric compound can be functionalized with multiple reagents via two different combinatorialization procedures. Following the negative branch from decision block 56, combinatorialization of the free amino site(s) of the growing oligomeric compound(s) is effected at process step 58 using a split bead synthesis. Following the positive branch from decision block 56, combinatorialization of the free amino site(s) is effected at process step 60 by using a mixture of compounds e.g. carboxylic acids or acid halide as, for example, via Examples 63 and 65.

The products of process steps 58 and 60 converge at convergent point 62 and these in turn converge with the products of process step 54 at convergent point 64. Both of

10

15

20

25

30

35

these points converge at convergent point 66 where intermediates that were shunted by the deblocking process step 50 via the negative branch of the decision block 48 also converge.

A query is made at decision block 68 to discontinue synthesis or to further elongate the growing oligomeric compound. If the current oligomeric compounds is of sufficient length, at decision block 68, a decision to effect final deblocking, generally depicted by box 108, is made. Following the negative branch of decision block 68, final deblocking is effected at process step 72 to give the final product or products 78.

If further extension of the growing oligomeric compound is desired, the positive branch of decision block 68 is followed. This leads to the extension procedure generally depicted by box 110. To effect oligomeric compound elongation, at process step 70 a hydroxyl protecting group is removed and at process step 74 a further aminodiol monomer subunit is added. The growing oligomeric compound is now reintroduced at conversion point 14 (via connecting point 46) into the process loop for a further iteration of synthesis depicted in Figure 1A. Here the process of selection of paths independently leading to or bypassing oxidation and/or functionalization is then repeated.

The process of the invention can generally be characterized as first selecting and attaching one or more monomer subunits to a support. This corresponds generally to procedure box 102 of the figures. For the moment bypassing the oxidization procedure, generally depicted by box 104, and the functionalization procedure, generally depicted by box 106, the hydroxyl blocking group of the monomeric subunits can be removed and a further iteration of the addition of monomer units effected. This is accomplished by the extension procedure generally depicted by box 110.

If during this iteration of the process, oxidization of

15

20

25

30

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 50 -

the phosphate linker is desired, oxidization will be effected via the oxidization procedure generally depicted by box 104. Further if prior to the next iteration but post the oxidization procedure, functionalization of the amino group of the last monomer subunit(s) added is desired, functionalization is effected via the functionalization procedure generally depicted by box 106.

If the growing oligomeric compound or compounds is/are of sufficient length, synthesis is halted and the compound or compounds are deblocked and cleaved from their supports via the final deblocking procedure, generally depicted by box 108.

It is of course recognized that the oxidization step of the first monomer subunit can be effected or oxidization of each subsequently added monomer subunit can be effected during the iteration of the process when they are added. Alternatively, oxidization need not be effected for each monomeric subunit added but can be effected during some subsequent iteration of the process. It is further recognized that functionalization of the amino site can be effected for the first monomer subunit and it can be effected for each added monomer subunit. Alternatively, functionalization need not be effected for each monomeric subunit added but can be effected during some subsequent iteration of the process.

#### EXAMPLE 1

## N-Fmoc-trans-4-Hydroxy-L-Proline

trans-4-Hydroxy-L-proline (5.00 g, 38.2 mmol) and NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (8.00 g, 95.2 mmol) were suspended in 150 ml H<sub>2</sub>O/Dioxane (1:1). Fluorenylmethyl chloroformate (11.4 g, 44.0 mmol) in 25 ml toluene was added dropwise. The temperature of the reaction was not allowed to rise above 25 °C during the addition. The mixture was stirred vigorously overnight, and

15

20

25

30

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 51 -

then quenched with 50 ml saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution and 50 ml water. The solution was then extracted with 100 ml diethyl ether. The aqueous layer was acidified to pH 1 with concentrated HCl, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate, and the organic extracts washed with brine. The solution was dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed in vacuo. The pure product crystallized from the concentrated solution. Yield: 13.4 g (100%).  $^{1}$ H NMR: (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 200 MHz)  $\delta$  7.75-7.15 (8H, m, ArH), 4.55-4.05 (5H, m, ArCHCH<sub>2</sub>, H2, H4), 3.65-3.45 (2H, m, 2 H5), 2.35-2.10 (2H, m, 2 H3).

## EXAMPLE 2

# N-Fmoc-3-Hydroxypyrrolidine-5-Methanol

To a solution of N-Fmoc-trans-4-hydroxy-L-proline (13.4 g, 38.1 mmol) in 250 ml THF was added borane-methyl sulfide (78 mmol, 5.78 g, 7.22 ml) dropwise at room temperature. After the evolution of  $\rm H_2$  had ceased, the solution was heated to reflux with mechanical stirring. After 1 hour a white precipitate had formed. Methanol was carefully added, and the resulting solution refluxed for a further 15 minutes. The solution was cooled to room temperature, the solvents evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residual gum coevaporated with 2x100 ml methanol. The resulting crystalline product weighed 12.0 g (35.3 mmol, 93%).  $^{1}$ H NMR: (CDC13, 200 MHz)  $\delta$  7.85-7.25 (8H, m, ArH), 4.50-4.10 (5H, m, ArCHCH2, H3, H5), 3.80-3.40 (4H, m, 2 H2, 2 H6), 2.15-1.95 (1H, m, H2a), 1.80-1.60 (1H, m, H2b).

#### EXAMPLE 3

# ${\tt N-Fmoc-5-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-3-Hydroxypyrrolidine}$

The diol, N-Fmoc-3-hydroxypyrrolidine-5-methanol (10.59g, 31.2 mmol) was coevaporated with dry pyridine (2 X 50 ml), redissolved in 200 ml dry pyridine, and cooled in an ice bath. Dimethoxytrityl chloride (11.0 g, 32.5 mmol) was

added in portions over 30 min, and the solution stirred at 0  $^{\circ}$ C overnight. Methanol was then added (10 ml), and the solvent removed under reduced pressure. The resulting gum was redissolved in toluene (100 ml), filtered to remove the pyridinium hydrochloride and taken to dryness again. The residue was dissolved in  $CH_2Cl_2$  (300 ml), washed with 150 ml 0.1 M citric acid solution, 150 ml sat NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine, and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub> followed by evaporation. The residue was crystallized from methanol and dried to give (15.4 g, 23.9 mmol, 77%).

#### EXAMPLE 4

10

15

20

25

30

# 5-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-3-Hydroxypyrrolidine

To a solution N-Fmoc-5-dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-3-hydroxypyrrolidine (3.40 g, 5.30 mmol) in 15 ml DMF was added piperidine (1.09 ml, 0.935 g, 11.0 mmol). The solution was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour, water (100 ml) added, and the aqueous solution extracted with ethyl acetate (2 X 75 ml). The organic extracts were washed with aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine, dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography using a gradient of 1 - 3% MeOH in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> containing 0.5% triethylamine. Pure product was obtained (1.86 g, 84%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR: (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 200 MHz) δ 7.42-6.80 (13 H, ArH), 4,35 (1H, m, H5), 3.77 (6H, s, 2 OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.62 (1H, m, H3), 3.13-2.88 (4H, m, 2 H6, 2 H2), 1.87 (1H, g, H4a), 1.65 (1H, m, H4b).

# EXAMPLE 5

# N-(Phenylacetyl)-5-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-3-Hydroxypyrrolidine

Phenylacetic acid (1.50 g, 11 mmol) and HOBT (1.63 g, 12 mmol) were dissolved in 100 ml  $\mathrm{CH_2Cl_2}$  and EDC (15 mmol, 2.88 g) was added. After 15 min, 5-dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-3-hydroxypyrrolidine was added, followed by DIEA (20 mmol, 3.5

ml). The reaction was stirred until the starting material was consumed, and quenched with 10 ml NaHCO<sub>3</sub>. The mixture was extracted twice with ethyl acetate, washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine, dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and evaporated. The product was purified by flash chromatography to give 4.0 g product (75%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR:  $(CDCl_3, 200 \text{ MHz})$  (2 rotamers, 3'-O-TMS) d 7.43-7.13, 6.88-6.74 (13 Ar-H), 4.67, 4.49, 4.37, 4.13 (4 m, 2H, H3, H5), 3.78 (s, 6H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.78-3.50 (m, 2H, H2a, b), 3.66, (s, 2H, CH<sub>2</sub>Ar) 3.35 (q, 1H, H6a), 3.12 (m, 1H, H6b), 2.14-1.70 (m, 2H, H4a, b), 0.10 (d, 9H, OSi(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>).

#### EXAMPLE 6

10

15

20

30

# Succinic acid Fluorenylmethyl Ester

Fluorenemethanol (10.0 g, 51.0 mmol) was dissolved in  $150 \text{ ml } \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ , and succinic anhydride (5.6 g, 56 mmol) was added. The solution was stirred for 6 h, and a further portion of succinic anhydride (2.5 g, 25 mmol) was added, and stirring continued overnight. The reaction appeared complete by TLC. The solvent was then removed, and the residue extracted with ethyl acetate, washed with 1% HCl, water, brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and evaporated to an oil which crystallized on standing. A quantitative yield of crude product was obtained which was used without further purification.

# EXAMPLE 7

# 25 (N1-Thymine) -2-Acetic Acid

Methyl bromoacetate (25.5 g, 15.2 ml, 160 mmol) was added to a suspension of  $\rm K_2CO_3$  (44.2 g, 320 mmol) and thymine (20.2 g, 160 mmol) in 500 ml dry DMF with stirring overnight. The suspension was filtered and the solvent removed under reduced pressure. The residue was suspended in 120 ml  $\rm H_2O$  and 30 ml 4 N HCl, stirred for 30 minutes and filtered again. The solid was suspended in 250 ml  $\rm H_2O$ , to which was added 100

ml 2.5 M NaOH. The solution was heated to boiling, cooled and acidified to pH 1 with concentrated HCl. The precipitate was dried in vacuo to give 13.6 g (73.6 mmol, 46%) pure product. <sup>1</sup>H NMR: (DMSO-d6, 200 MHz)  $\delta$  7.48 (s, 1H, H6), 4.37 (s, 2H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.76 (s, 3H, CH<sub>3</sub>).

#### EXAMPLE 8

5

10

15

20

25

30

## N-Fmoc-3-Aminopropionic Acid

Sodium bicarbonate (2.52 g, 30 mmol) and 3-aminopropionic acid (1.00 g, 11.2 mmol) were dissolved in 50 ml water and 50 ml dioxane was added. A solution of fluorenylmethyl chloroformate (3.10 g, 12.0 mmol) in 50 ml dioxane was added dropwise with stirring. After 6 hours the solution was diluted with water (100 ml) and saturated bicarbonate solution (50 ml), extracted once with diethyl ether, and the aqueous layer acidified to pH 2 with concentrated HCl. The cloudy solution was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 X 100 ml), washed with brine and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>. After evaporation a mixture of the title product and the peptide dimer was obtained. The pure product was obtained by flash chromatography. <sup>1</sup>H NMR: (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 200 MHz) δ 7.95-7.26 (8H, m, ArH), 7.40-7.15 (3H, m, CHCH<sub>2</sub>O),3.20 (2H, t, J=8 Hz, CH<sub>2</sub>N), 2.40 (2H, t, J=8 Hz, HOOCCH<sub>2</sub>).

#### EXAMPLE 9

#### N-Imidazolyl-2-Acetic acid

Imidazole (3.7 g, 54 mmol) was added to a suspension of sodium hydride (2.6 g of a 60% dispersion in oil, 60 mmol) in 50 ml dry THF. Bromoacetic acid (3.4 g, 24 mmol) was then added and the mixture stirred overnight. Water (1 ml) was then added and the solvent removed under reduced pressure. The residue was taken up in water (50 ml, pH >10), extracted with ether and the organic layer discarded. The aqueous layer was acidified to pH 1 with concentrated HCl and

The state of 4D ij extracted again with ether. The aqueous layer was evaporated to dryness. The oily residue was dissolved in absolute ethanol (EtOH) to precipitate NaCl, and recrystallized from acetone/methanol to give 1.22 g (7.5 mmol, 30%) pure product as the hydrochloride.  $^{1}\text{H}$  NMR: (DMSO-d6, 200 MHz)  $\delta$  9.20 (s, H2), 7.76 (d, J = 1.5 Hz), 7.69 (d, J = 1.5 Hz), 5.20 (s,  $CH_{2}$ ).

- 55 -

#### EXAMPLE 10

# (9-Adenine) -2-Acetic Acid Ethyl Ester

Sodium hydride (8.20 g 60% in oil, 205 mmol) was added 10 to a suspension of adenine (25.0 g, 185 mmol) in 500 ml DMF. After vigorous stirring for 2 hours using a mechanical stirrer,  $H_2$  evolution stopped and a thick slurry was obtained. Ethyl bromoacetate (55.6 g, 36.9 ml, 333 mmol) was added dropwise over 3 hours, and stirring continued for a further 1 15 hour. Water (10 ml) and  $H_2SO_4$  were added to pH 4. The solvent was evaporated and the residue suspended in 500 ml  ${\rm H_2O}$ , filtered and washed with water. The residue was recrystallized from 400 ml ethanol to give 23.8 g (108 mmol, 58%) pure product. 20

#### EXAMPLE 11

25

30

# (N6-Benzoyl-9-Adenine)-2-Acetic Acid

To a suspension of (9-adenylyl)-2-acetic acid ethyl ester (6.06 g, 27.4 mmol) in 250 ml dry pyridine was added benzoyl chloride (9.60 ml, 11.6 g, 82 mmol), and the solution stirred for 4 hours at room temperature. Methanol (25 ml) was added and the solvents evaporated. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (2 X 250 ml), washed with 0.1 NHCl,  $H_2O_1$ , saturated NaHCO3, brine, and dried with  $Na_2SO_4$ . The organic extracts were evaporated and the solid residue was redissolved in 250 ml THF at 0°C, to which was added 100 ml  $\,$ 1M NaOH. The solution was stirred at 0°C for 1 hour and

15

25

acidified to pH 1 with concentrated HCl, and the aqueous portion extracted once with ether. The product, which began to crystallize almost immediately, was collected by filtration to yield 4.96 g (61%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR: (DMSO-d6, 200 MHz)  $\delta$  8.86, 8.84 (d, H2, H8), 8.1 (d, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz, ArH), 7.69-7.58 (m, 3H, Ar-H), 5.22 (s, 2H,  $CH_2$ ).

#### EXAMPLE 12

#### N-4-Benzoylcytosine

Cytosine hemihydrate (12.0 g, 100 mmol) was coevaporated with pyridine and resuspended in 250 ml dry pyridine. Benzoyl chloride (58 ml, 70.3 g, 500 mmol) was added dropwise (exothermic). The solution was stirred at RT overnight, and water (50 ml) carefully added. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue dissolved in 700 ml  $\rm H_2O$  containing 55 g NaOH. The solution was stirred for 1 h after complete dissolution of the material. Concentrated HCl was then added to pH 4.0, the white precipitate was collected and boiled in 1 liter EtOH, cooled to RT and filtered to give 16.1 g product (75%).

#### EXAMPLE 13

#### N-4-Benzoyl-1-Cytosine-2-Acetic acid 20

To a suspension of N-4-Benzoylcytosine (15.0 g, 69.7 mmol) and  $K_2CO_3$  (9.7 g, 70 mmol) in 500 ml DMF was added methyl bromoacetate (6.6 ml, 10.7 g, 70 mmol). suspension was stirred vigorously for 3 days, filtered and evaporated. The residue was treated with water (120 ml), and 10 ml 4N HCl for 15 min, and the solid collected by filtration. The residue was resuspended in 120 ml water, and The suspension was stirred at RT for 45 60 ml 2N NaOH added. min, until all the solids had dissolved. The solution was acidified to pH 2 with conc HCl, filtered, and the solid 30 dried in vacuo at 60 °C to give 11.6 g product (61%).

20

30

#### EXAMPLE 14

## N-2-Isobutyroyl-9-Guanine-2-Acetic Acid

To a suspension of 2-amino-6-chloropurine (10 mmol) and  $K_2\text{CO}_3$  (15 mmol) in DMF (25 ml) is added ethyl bromoacetate (10 mmol). The mixture is stirred vigorously for 24 hours, filtered and the solvent evaporated. The residue is resuspended in 25 ml pyridine and isobutyroyl chloride added (20 mmol). After stirring for 18 hours, water is added and the solvent removed. The residue is suspended in 1N HCl and heated to reflux for 1 hour. The suspension is then cooled to 0°C, NaOH added to pH 12, and the suspension stirred for 1 hour. The solution is acidified to pH 3, and the product is collected by filtration.

#### EXAMPLE 15

## 15 Benzyl 3,6,9,12-Tetraoxatridecanoate

Triethyleneglycol monomethyl ether (10 mmol) and benzyl bromoacetate (11 mmol) are added to a suspension of anhydrous  $\rm K_2CO_3$  (15 mmol) in 50 ml anhydrous DMF. The suspension is stirred at room temperature overnight. Water is added and the emulsion is extracted with ethyl acetate (3 X 200 ml), washed with water, brine, and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The solvent is evaporated and the residual oil purified by flash chromatography to give the title compound.

#### EXAMPLE 16

# 25 3,6,9,12-Tetraoxatridecanoic Acid

Benzyl-3,6,9,12-Tetraoxatridecanoate (5 mmol) is dissolved in methanol (50 ml) and 10% palladium on carbon is added (100 mg catalyst/mmol). The suspension is shaken under 30 psi  $\rm H_2$  until the starting material is consumed. The suspension is filtered through a short pad of Celite, washed thoroughly with methanol, and the solvent evaporated. The product is used directly without purification.

- 58 -

#### EXAMPLE 17

# Benzyl Bis-[(2-Pyridyl)-2-ethyl]-Aminoacetate

To a suspension of  $K_2CO_3$  (15 mmol) in 25 ml DMF was added 2,2'-bis(2-pyridylethyl)-amine (10 mmol) followed by benzyl bromoacetate (12 mmol). The suspension was stirred for 4 hours at room temperature. Water was then added, and the suspension extracted with ethyl acetate (2 X 100 ml), washed with 5%  $Na_2CO_3$ , water, brine, dried with  $MgSO_4$  and the solvents removed. The product was obtained as an oil in quantitative yield. Product was identified by NMR.

#### EXAMPLE 18

10

15

#### Bis (2-(2-Pyridyl) ethyl) - Aminoacetic Acid

Benzyl bis-[(2-pyridyl)-2-ethyl]-aminoacetate (5 mmol) is dissolved in methanol (50 ml) and 10% palladium on carbon is added (100 mg catalyst/mmol). The suspension is shaken under 30 psi  $\rm H_2$  until the starting material is consumed. The suspension is filtered through a short pad of Celite, washed thoroughly with methanol, and the solvent evaporated. The product is used directly without purification.

## 20 **EXAMPLE 19**

#### N-Carbazolyl-2-Acetic acid

The title compound is prepared as per Example 13 using carbazole as the starting heterocycle.

# EXAMPLE 20

#### 25 N-Pyrrolyl-2-Acetic acid

The title compound is prepared as per Example 13 using pyrrole as the starting heterocycle.

#### EXAMPLE 21

# N-Trifluoroacetyl-Glycine Triethylammonium salt

To a suspension of glycine (1.50 g, 20 mmol) in 100 ml

15

20

25

dry methanol were added triethylamine (3.5 ml, 2.5 g, 25 mmol) and ethyl trifluoroacetate (3.0 ml, 3.55g, 25 mmol). The mixture was stirred overnight to give a homogeneous solution. The solvents were removed and the resulting oil coevaporated with toluene to remove traces of methanol. The product was used without purification.

#### EXAMPLE 22

## 2-0-(Dimethoxytrityl)ethanol

A solution of ethylene glycol (2.45 ml, 44 mmol) in dry pyridine (25 ml) was cooled to 0 °C in an ice bath. Excess triethylamine (7 ml) and 4-dimethylaminopyridine catalyst (120 mg, 1 mmol) was added followed by the slow addition of dimethoxytrityl chloride (7.42 g, 21.9 mmol) over 30 minutes. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 1 hr and then room temperature for 1 hr. The resulting solution was quenched with methanol and evaporated to dryness under reduced The residue was dissolved in saturated NaHCO3 and pressure. extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc extracts were washed with cold saturated sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic phase was separated, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and evaporated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel using ethyl acetate-hexanes (gradient 10 to 20%). The title compound was isolated to yield 5.53 g (70%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR: (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.50-7.20, 6.90-6.80 (m, 13 H, ArH), 3.80 (s, 6 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.75 (t, 2H,  $CH_2OH$ ), 3.25 (t, 2H,  $DMTOCH_2$ ).

#### EXAMPLE 23

2-Dimethoxytrityl ethanol hemisuccinate Triethylammonium salt

A solution of 2-O-(dimethoxytrityl)ethanol (1.0 g, 2.77 mmol), triethylamine (0.4 ml, 3 mmol), and 4-dimethylaminopyridine catalyst (120 mg, 1 mmol) in dry dichloroethane was treated with succinic anhydride (410 mg,

20

25

0.41 mmol). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hrs. The mixture was filtered and the filtrate was purified by silica gel flash column chromatography using chloroform-methanol-triethylamine to yield the title compound as a triethylammonium salt.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR: (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  7.50-7.20, 6.90-6.80 (m, 13 H, ArH), 4.26 (t, 2H, CH<sub>2</sub>OCO), 3.80 (s, 6 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.25 (t, 2H, DMTOCH<sub>2</sub>), 3.05 (q, 6H, N(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 2.70

- 60 -

#### EXAMPLE 24

# 10 2-0-(Dimethoxytrityl) ethoxyphosphonic Acid

 $(m, 4H, OOCCH_2CH_2COO), 1.25 (t, 9H, N(CH_2CH_3)_3.$ 

A solution of imidazole (4.29 g, 63 mmol)in dry acetonitrile at 0 °C (100 ml) was treated dropwise with PCl3 (1.77 ml, 20.3 mmol) over a period of 30 minutes. resulting solution was further treated with triethylamine (9.06 ml, 65 mmol). To the thick slurry was added 2-0-(dimethoxytrityl)ethanol (2.10 g, 5.81 mmol) in anhydrous acetonitrile (150 ml) slowly over a period of 30 minutes. The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for 15 minutes. The mixture was quenched with 1M TEAB and the mixture is evaporated in vacuo to a minimum volume and extracted with dichloromethane (2x150 ml). The dichloromethane extracts were washed with TEAB and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography using a gradient of 0% to 5% methanol in dichloromethane/1% triethylamine to yield 1.3 g purified material (43%).  ${}^{1}H$  NMR: (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  7.50-7.20, 6.90-6.80 (m, 13 H, ArH), 6.96 (d, 1H,  $J_{PH} = 624$  Hz, PH), 4.06 (m, 2H,  $CH_2OP$ ), 3.80 (s, 6 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.25 (t, 2H, DMTOCH<sub>2</sub>), 3.05 (q, 6H,  $N(CH_2CH_3)_3)$ , 1.25 (t, 9H,  $N(CH_2CH_3)_3$ ). <sup>31</sup>P NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>); 5.89.

#### 30 EXAMPLE 25

Synthesis of 2-O-(Dimethoxytrityl)-ethylsuccinate Half Ester
A solution of 2-O-(dimethoxytrityl)ethanol (1.0 g, 2.77

mmol), triethylamine (0.4 ml, 3 mmol), and 4dimethylaminopyridine catalyst (120 mg, 1 mmol) in dry
dichloroethane was treated with succinic anhydride (410 mg,
0.41 mmol). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for
16 hrs. The mixture was filtered and the filtrate was
purified by silica gel flash column chromatography using
chloroform-methanol-triethylamine to yield the title compound
as a triethylammonium salt. ¹H NMR: (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.50-7.20, 6.906.80 (m, 13 H, ArH), 4.26 (t, 2H, CH<sub>2</sub>OCO), 3.80 (s, 6 H,
10 OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.25 (t, 2H, DMTOCH<sub>2</sub>), 3.05 (q, 6H, N(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 2.70
(m, 4H, OOCCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>COO), 1.25 (t, 9H, N(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>.

#### EXAMPLE 26

# Derivatization of LCAA CPG With 2-0-(Dimethoxytrityl)ethylsuccinate Half Ester

2-O-(Dimethoxytrityl)ethylsuccinate half ester triethyl-15 ammonium salt (135 mg) was dissolved in dichloromethane (5 4-Dimethylaminopyridine catalyst (40 mg, 0.2 mmol) was added followed by toluene diisocyanate (.029 ml, 0.2 mmol). The mixture was shaken for 18 min. Long chain alkyl amine controlled pore glass (LCAA CPG) (1.0 g) was added and the 20 mixture was shaken with the exclusion of light for 16 hrs. The mixture was filtered and washed with dichloromethane and then diethylether (3x10 ml each). The CPG was shaken for 16 hrs in pyridine/water (4:1), filtered, and rinsed with pyridine (5x5 ml). A 10 mg sample of the dried CPG was 25 treated with 3% trichloroacetic acid in dichloromethane. The presence of the trityl ion qualitatively verified the derivatization. The loading was measured to be 30 µmol/g by measuring the absorbance of the dimethoxytrityl cation.

# 30 **EXAMPLE 27**

# Synthesis of 10-0-(Dimethoxytrityl)-1-decanol

A solution of decane-1,10-diol in dry pyridine and

20

25

30

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 62 -

containing excess triethylamine is treated with one equivalent of dimethoxytrityl chloride for a period of six hours. The resulting solution is evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure, the residue redissolved in methylene

5 chloride and the solution washed with cold saturated sodium bicarbonate, water and brine. The organic phase is separated, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and again evaporated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue is flash-chromatographed on silica gel using ethyl acetate—

10 hexanes to isolate the purified product. Characterization by H-NMR yields signals for the DMT group (multiplet, 8.0-7.0 ppm), the decane group (multiplets, 1.2-4.0 ppm) and the alcohol (variable).

#### EXAMPLE 28

15 Synthesis of 10-0-(Dimethoxytrityl)decyloxy-phosphonic acid

A solution of three equivalents of imidazole in dry acetonitrile is treated dropwise with one equivalent of PCl3 over a period of 30 minutes. The resulting solution is further treated with excess triethylamine to drive the reaction to completion. After 1 hr the mixture is treated with a solution of one equivalent of 10-0-(dimethoxytrityl)decan-1,10-diol in dry acetonitrile and the mixture stirred at room temperature for an additional hour. This mixture is treated with an excess of a solution of triethylammonium bicarbonate, pH 8, to yield the title compound. The compound is purified by repeated extraction of the bicarbonate solution with ethyl acetate. Pooling and drying of the extracts over sodium bicarbonate followed by evaporation of the solvent under reduced pressure yields a compound which is used as such without further purification. Characterization by  $^{31}P$  NMR (doublet, 6 ppm, JP-H =600 Hz) and  $^{1}\mathrm{H}$  NMR yields signals for the DMT and the decane groups as for 10-O-(dimethoxytrityl)decandiol and signals for the

triethylammonium groups (doublet, triplet, 3.2-2.2 ppm).

#### EXAMPLE 29

5

10

20

25

30

# Synthesis of 10-0-(Dimethoxytrityl) decylsuccinate Half Ester

A solution of 10-0-(dimethoxytrityl)decan-1,10-diol in dry dichloromethane is treated with one equivalent of succinic anhydride, excess triethylamine and 5 mole % of 4dimethylaminopyridine catalyst. The mixture is stirred overnight under anhydrous conditions and then further diluted with dichloromethane. This solution is washed with cold, saturated sodium bicarbonate, water and brine. The solution is then dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure. The resulting solid is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography using ethyl acetate-methanol-triethylamine to yield the title compound as the triethylammonium salt. The free acid is obtained by repeated coevaporation of this material with wet methanol. Characterization by <sup>1</sup>H NMR yields signals for the DMT and decylene groups as for 10-0-(dimethoxytrityl)decan-1,10-diol and signals for the succinic group (two closely spaced doublet of doublets, 2.5-3.0 ppm).

#### EXAMPLE 30

# Derivatization of LCAA CPG with 10-0-(Dimethoxytrityl)decylsuccinate Half Ester

A commercially obtained sample of controlled pore glass derivatized with long chain alkylamine groups (LCAA CPG) is suspended in dry acetonitrile. In a separate dry container, 10-O-(dimethoxytrityl)decylsuccinate half ester is treated with two equivalents of pentafluorophenol, excess triethylamine and two equivalents of dicyclohexyl carbodimide. The mixture containing activated 10-O-(dimethoxytrityl)decylsuccinate half ester is stirred under argon for one hour and then added to the suspension of CPG

10

20

25

while maintaining anhydrous conditions. The mixture is then shaken gently for 6 hr, the supernatant is separated and the process is repeated twice more. The quantity of 10-0- (dimethoxytrityl) decylsuccinate half ester which is used in each treatment is based on the concentration of available amine groups per gram of LCAA CPG, generally found to be 25-40 mmoles/gram. The CPG is then treated with a dilute solution of acetic anhydride in pyridine for 1 hr to cap all unreacted amine functionalities and then washed several times with acetonitrile. The extent to which this CPG has been derivatized is determined by treating an accurately weighed sample of the resulting CPG with 2% dichloroacetic acid in acetonitrile and measuring the absorbance of an aliquot of the supernatant at 498 nm.

#### 15 **EXAMPLE 31**

### 2-N-Fmoc-2-Amino-1,3-Propanediol

2-Amino-1,3-propanediol (3.48g, 38.2 mmol) and NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (8.00 g, 95.2 mmol) are suspended in 150 ml H<sub>2</sub>O/Dioxane (1:1). Fluorenylmethyl chloroformate (11.4g, 44.0 mmol) in 25 ml toluene is added dropwise. The temperature of the reaction is maintained below 25 °C during the addition. The mixture is stirred vigorously overnight, and then quenched with 50 ml saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution and 50 ml water. The solution is extracted with 100 ml diethyl ether. The aqueous layer is acidified to pH 1 with concentrated HCl, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate, and the organic extracts are washed with brine. The solution is dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed in vacuo. The crude material is purified by silica gel column chromatography to give the title compound.

# 30 EXAMPLE 32

# 1-O-Dimethoxytrityl-N-Fmoc-2-Aminopropan-3-ol

A solution of N-Fmoc-2-amino-1,3-propanediol (13.79g, 44

20

25

30

mmol) in dry pyridine (250 ml) is cooled to 0°C in an ice bath. Excess triethylamine (7 ml) and 4-dimethylamino-pyridine catalyst (120 mg, 1 mmol) is added followed by the slow addition of dimethoxytrityl chloride (14.8g, 44 mmol) over 30 minutes. The mixture is stirred at 0°C until complete. The resulting solution is quenched with methanol and evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure. The residue is dissolved in saturated NaHCO3 and extracted with EtOAc. The EtOAc extracts are washed with cold saturated sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic phase is separated, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and evaporated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue is purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel to give the title compound.

- 65 -

#### 15 EXAMPLE 33

# 1-O-Dimethoxytrityl-N-Fmoc-2-Aminopropane-3-O-phosphonic Acid

A solution of imidazole (4.29g, 63 mmol) in dry acetonitrile at 0 °C (300 ml) is treated dropwise with PCl<sub>3</sub> (1.77 ml, 20.3 mmol) over a period of 30 minutes. The resulting solution is further treated with triethylamine (9.06 ml, 65 mmol). To the thick slurry was added 1-O-Dimethoxytrityl-N-Fmoc-2-Aminopropan-3-ol (3.58g, 5.81 mmol) in anhydrous acetonitrile (150 ml) slowly over a period of 30 minutes. The mixture is allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for 15 minutes. The mixture is quenched with pyridine/water 9:1 (100 mL) and the mixture is evaporated in vacuo to a minimum volume and extracted with dichloromethane (2x150 ml). The dichloromethane extracts are washed with water and evaporated in vacuo. The residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography using dichloromethane/MeOH/pyridine to give the title compound.

15

20

30

- 66 -

# 1-O-Dimethoxytrityl-N-Fmoc-2-Aminopropane-3-O-Succinate

1-O-Dimethoxytrityl-N-Fmoc-2-aminopropan-3-ol is treated with succinic anhydride as per the general procedure of Example 60 to give the title compound.

#### 5 EXAMPLE 35

Derivatization of LCAA CPG With 1-O-Dimethoxytrityl-N-Fmoc-2-Aminopropane-3-O-Succinate

1-O-Dimethoxytrityl-N-Fmoc-2-Aminopropane-3-O-Succinate ester is coupled onto LCAA CPG as per the general procedure of Example 61 to give the derivatized resin.

#### EXAMPLE 36

# 1-O-Dimethoxytrity1-2-Aminopropan-3-ol Succinate Derivatized Resin

The Fmoc protecting group on the 2-amino group of the 1-O-dimethoxytrityl-N-Fmoc-2-amino-1,3-propan-3-ol succinate derivatized CPG is removed by treatment with piperidine in dimethylformamide (DMF). CPG bound 1-O-dimethoxytrityl-N-Fmoc-2-amino-1,3-propanediol is treated with 2 equivalents of piperidine in DMF. The CPG is then washed with acetonitrile/pyridine 1:1 and then treated a second time with 2 equivalents of piperidine in DMF. Finally, the CPG is washed with acetonitrile-pyridine and then acetonitrile to give the deprotected material.

#### EXAMPLE 37

25 1-O-Dimethoxytrity1-2-N-(acetylthymine)amino-1,3-Propanediol Succinate Derivatized Resin

#### Method A

The 1-O-dimethoxytrityl-2-aminopropane-3-ol succinate derivatized resin (2.0 g, 1.0 mmol/gm loading, 1% crosslinked) is swollen in dichloromethane (200 mL) and to this is added thymine-2-acetic acid (2.0g, 10 mmol), [O-(7-azabenzo-

15

20

25

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 67 -

triazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,-tetramethyluronium hexafluorophosphate (3.8g, 10 mmol) and triethylamine (2.0g, 20 mmol). After 30 to 60 minutes the resin is washed 5 times with dichoromethane (50 mL), then 3 times with diethyl ether (100 mL), and is dried under a stream of nitrogen. The free flowing resin powder is used as is.

#### Method B

The 1-O-dimethoxytrityl-2-amino-1,3-propanediol succinate derivatized resin (2.0 g, 1.0 mmol/gm loading, 1% crosslinked) is swollen in dichloromethane (200 mL) and to this is added HOBt (0.1 M), PyBOP (0.1 M), N-methylmorpholine (0.15 M), as solutions in DMF followed by thymine-2-acetic acid (2.0g, 10 mmol). Coupling is allowed to proceed for 2-3 hours or overnight. The resin is washed 5 times with dichoromethane (50 mL), then 3 times with diethyl ether (100 mL), and is dried under a stream of nitrogen. The free flowing resin powder is used as is.

#### EXAMPLE 38

# Sequential Addition and functionalization of n Backbone segments

The dimethoxytrityl protecting group of the derivatized resin of Example 37 is removed by a treatment with a solution of trichloroacetic acid (3% w/v) in dichloromethane. The solution is passed over the solid support until the DMT cation color is completely gone. The solid support is washed with dichloromethane until no trace of acid remains. The resin is then washed with acetonitrile-pyridine (4:1) followed by a simultaneous treatment of the CPG with 10 equivalents of 1-O-dimethoxytrityl-N-Fmoc-2-amino-3-O-phosphonic acid and 30 equivalents of adamantane carbonyl chloride in acetonitrile-pyridine (1:1). The mixture is agitated by circulating the reagents in the synthesis vessel for 2 minutes. The CPG is then briefly washed with

15

20

25

30

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 68 -

acetonitrile-pyridine and then treated with diisopropyl phosphite adamantane carbonyl chloride to cap all unreacted hydroxyl groups. The CPG is washed with acetonitrilepyridine and then acetonitrile. The resulting phosphonic acid diester is reacted with a large molar excess of 10% diethylamine (the amine letter) in carbon tetrachloride/ pyridine (1:1). The solid support is shaken for 15 minutes and the supernatant is removed by filtration. The solid support is washed with pyridine. A second treatment with diethylamine in carbon tetrachloride/ pyridine followed by shaking will ensure efficient oxidation to the phosphoramidate. The Fmoc protecting group is removed as per the general procedure of Example 62. The resulting free amine group is treated with thymine-2-acetic acid as per the procedure of Example 37. This procedure is repeated twice to give a dimer having thymineacetyl groups corresponding to the letter and the tether covalently bound to the amine group attached to carbon in the backbone segment. The functional groups bound to the phosphoramidate nitrogen are ethyl This procedure when repeated n times will give a fully functionalized oligomer that is n+1 backbone segments long.

Upon completion of the addition of the last of the desired length and configuration of oligomeric sequence, the solid support is washed with pyridine/acetonitrile and the phosphoramidate is cleaved from the resin by treatment with concentrated ammonium hydroxide at room temperature for 3 hours. Evaporation of the supernatant and purification of the phosphoramidate on an RP-18 HPLC column yields the final oligomer.

#### EXAMPLE 39

#### N-Fmoc-Aspartic Acid-β-Benzyl Ester

Aspartic acid-\beta-benzyl ester (150 mmol) and diisopropyl-

10

20

30

ethylamine (66.3 ml, 49.1 g, 380 mmol) are suspended in 150 ml  $\rm H_2O$  + 300 ml dioxane. Fluorenylmethyl chloroformate (43.25 g, 1.1 eq) in 100 ml dioxane is added dropwise. The temperature of the reaction is not allowed to rise above 10 °C during the addition. The mixture is stirred vigorously overnight, and most of the solvent removed *in vacuo*. Water and satd bicarbonate solution are added (250 ml each), and the solution extracted with 250 ml diethyl ether, which is discarded. The aqueous layer is acidified to pH 1 with conc HCl, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate (2 X 300 ml), and the organic extracts washed with brine. The solution is dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed in vacuo to give the title compound.

### EXAMPLE 40

## 15 4-Hydroxy-2-N-Fmoc-aminobutanoic acid

2-N-Fmoc-aspartic acid- $\beta\text{-benzyl}$  ester (10 mmol) is dissolved in dry THF (100 ml), cooled to 0 °C and Lithium borohydride (15 mmol) added. The solution is stirred at 0 °C and then room temperature until the complete disappearance of the starting material. Excess ethyl acetate is then added, and the solution is washed with 0.1M citric acid solution, brine and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The crude material is purified by flash chromatography to give the title compound.

### EXAMPLE 41

# 25 4-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2-N-Fmoc-aminobutanoic acid

4-Hydroxy-2-N-Fmoc-aminobutanoic acid (30 mmol) is coevaporated with dry pyridine (2 X 50 ml), redissolved in 200 ml dry pyridine, and cooled in an ice bath. Dimethoxytrityl chloride (22.0 g, 65 mmol) is added in portions over 30 min, and the solution stirred at RT overnight. Water is then added (10 ml), and the solution stirred until the trityl ester is completely hydrolyzed. The

solvent is removed under reduced pressure. The residue is dissolved in  $CH_2Cl_2$  (300 ml), washed with 150 ml 0.1 M citric acid solution, 150 ml sat NaHCO3, brine, and dried with MgSO4 followed by evaporation. The residue is purified by flash chromatography.

#### EXAMPLE 42

5

10

## 4-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2-N-Fmoc-aminobutan-1-ol

To a stirred solution of 4-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2-N-Fmocaminobutanoic acid (140 mmol) in 500 ml THF is added Boranemethyl sulfide (290 mmol, 21.8 g, 27.3 ml) dropwise at RT. Stirring is continued until the reaction is complete. Methanol is carefully added (vigorous  $H_2$  evolution), and the resulting solution stirred for a further 15 min. The solvent is evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residual gum 15 coevaporated with 2 X 300 ml MeOH. The product is purified by flash chromatography.

### EXAMPLE 43

# 1-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2-N-Fmoc-2-Aminobutane-4-O-Phosphonic Acid

20 1-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2-N-Fmoc-2-aminobutan-4-ol is treated as per the general procedure of Example 59 to give the title compound.

#### EXAMPLE 44

# 1-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2-N-Fmoc-2-Aminobutan-4-O-Succinate.

1-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2-N-Fmoc-2-aminobutan-1-ol is 25 treated as per the general procedure of Example 60 to give the title compound.

### EXAMPLE 45

30

1-Derivatization of LCAA CPG With 1-O-Dimethoxytrity1-2-N-Fmoc-2-Aminobutane-4-0-Succinate

30

- 71 -

1-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2-N-Fmoc-2-aminobutane-4-O-succinate is treated as per the general procedure of Example 61 to give the derivatized resin.

### EXAMPLE 46

# 5 1-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2-Aminobutane-4-O-Succinate Derivatized

The derivatized resin of Example 45 is treated as per the general procedure of Example 62 to remove the Fmoc protecting group giving the title compound attached to resin.

### 10 EXAMPLE 47

# 1-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2-(N-2-Acetylthymine) -Aminobutane-4-O-succinate Derivatized Resin

The derivatized resin of Example 46 is treated with N-1-thymine-2-acetic acid as per the procedure of Example 37 to give the title compound attached to resin.

### EXAMPLE 48

# Synthesis of a 3-mer Having the 2-Amino-1,4-Butanediol backbone segment

1-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2-(N-2-acetylthymine)-aminobutane
20 derivatized resin is treated with 1-O-dimethoxytrityl-2-NFmoc-2-amino-4-phosphonic acid-1,4-butanediol, morpholine,
and N-1-thymine acetic acid as per the procedures of Example
38 and Example 126 to give a 3 mer with 2-N-acetylthymine
bound to the amino groups and morpholine groups as the
25 phosphoramidate substituent.

### EXAMPLE 49

## 2-(N-Fmoc)-Glutamic acid-y-methyl ester

Glutamic acid- $\gamma$ -methyl ester (150 mmol) and diisopropylethylamine (66.3 ml, 49.1 g, 380 mmol) are suspended in 150 ml  $H_2O$  + 300 ml dioxane. Fluorenylmethyl chloroformate (

PCT/US96/09604

5

10

15

20

25

30

43.25 g, 1.1 eq) in 100 ml dioxane is added dropwise. The temperature of the reaction is not allowed to rise above 10 °C during the addition. The mixture is stirred vigorously overnight, and most of the solvent removed in vacuo. Water and satd bicarbonate solution are added (250 ml each), and the solution extracted with 250 ml diethyl ether, which is discarded. The aqueous layer is acidified to pH 1 with conc HCl, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate (2 X 300 ml), and the organic extracts washed with brine. The solution is dried with  $MgSO_4$ , filtered and the solvent removed in vacuo to give the title compound.

- 72 -

### EXAMPLE 50

# 5-Hydroxy-4-N-Fmoc-aminopentanoic acid methyl ester

To a solution of 2-(N-Fmoc)-glutamic acid-y-methyl ester (140 mmol) in 500 ml THF is added Borane-methyl sulfide (290 mmol, 21.8 g, 27.3 ml) dropwise at RT (3 neck flask, mechanical stirrer, condenser, dropping funnel). After the evolution of  $H_2$  has ceased, the solution is heated to reflux with vigorous stirring. After 1 hr a white precipitate has formed. Methanol is carefully added (vigorous  $H_2$  evolution), and the resulting solution refluxed for a further 15 min. The solution is cooled to RT, the solvents evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residual gum coevaporated with 2  ${\tt X}$ 300 ml MeOH. The product is purified by flash chromatography.

# EXAMPLE 51

# 5-O-Dimethoxytrityl-4-Fmoc-aminopentanoic acid methyl ester

5-Hydroxy-4-N-Fmoc-aminopentanoic acid methyl ester (30 mmol) is coevaporated with dry pyridine (2  $\times$  50 ml), redissolved in 200 ml dry pyridine, and cooled in an ice bath. Dimethoxytrityl chloride (11.0 g, 32.5 mmol) is added in portions over 30 min, and the solution stirred at 0°C

overnight. Methanol is then added (10 ml), and the solvent removed under reduced pressure. The resulting gum is redissolved in toluene (100 ml), filtered to remove the pyridinium hydrochloride and taken to dryness again. The residue is dissolved in  $\mathrm{CH_2Cl_2}$  (300 ml), washed with 150 ml 0.1 M citric acid solution, 150 ml sat NaHCO3, brine, and dried with MgSO4 followed by evaporation. The residue is purified by flash chromatography to give the title compound.

### 10 EXAMPLE 52

# 5-O-Dimethoxytrityl-4-Fmoc-aminopentan-1-ol

5-O-Dimethoxytrityl-4-Fmoc-aminopantanoic acid methyl ester (10 mmol) is dissolved in dry THF (100 ml), cooled to 0 °C and Lithium borohydride (10 mmol) added. The solution is stirred at 0 °C and then room temperature until the complete disappearance of the starting material. Excess ethyl acetate is then added, and the solution washed with 0.1M citric acid solution, sat NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The product is purified by flash chromatography

### 20 EXAMPLE 53

25

30

# 5-O-Dimethoxytrityl-4-N-Fmoc-aminopentan-1-ol hydrogen phosphonate

Imidazole (6.81 g, 100 mmol) is dissolved in 400 ml dry CH<sub>3</sub>CN and cooled to 0 °C. Phosphorus trichloride (2.62 ml, 4.12 g, 30 mmol) is added dropwise, followed by triethylamine (21 ml, 15.2 g, 150 mmol). A thick slurry develops to which is added over 15 min a solution of 5-O-dimethoxytrityl-4-N-Fmoc-2-amino-1,5-pentanediol (10 mmol) in 50 ml CH<sub>3</sub>CN. Once the addition is complete, the ice bath is removed and the solution stirred at RT for 30 min. The reaction is stopped by the addition of 100 ml pyridine/water (9:1). The solvent is removed and the residue extracted (3X200 ml) with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, and washed with water. The organic phase is dried with MgSO4

- 74 -

and concentrated under reduced pressure. The product is further purified by flash chromatography using a gradient of MeOH (1-10%) in  $CH_2Cl_2$  + 1% pyridine.

#### EXAMPLE 54

5 5-O-Dimethoxytrityl-4-N-Fmoc-Aminopentane-1-O-Succinic Acid
Half Ester

5-O-Dimethoxytrityl-4-N-Fmoc-aminopentane-1-ol is treated as per the general procedure of Example 60 to give the title compound.

### 10 EXAMPLE 55

Derivatization of LCAA CPG With 5-O-Dimethoxytrityl-4-N-Fmoc-Aminopentane-1-O-Succinic Acid Half Ester

5-O-Dimethoxytrityl-4-N-Fmoc-Aminopentane-1-O-Succinic Acid Half Ester is treated as per the general procedure of Example 61 to give the derivatized resin.

### EXAMPLE 56

5-O-Dimethoxytrityl-4-Aminopentane-1-O-Succinic acid Derivatized Resin

The derivatized resin of Example 55 is treated as per the procedure of Example 62 to remove the Fmoc protecting group giving the title compound attached to resin.

### EXAMPLE 57

5-O-Dimethoxytrityl-4-N-Phenylacetyl-Aminopentane-1-O-Succinic acid Derivatized Resin

25 The derivatized resin of Example 56 is treated with phenyl acetic acid as per the procedure of Example 38 to give the title compound attached to resin.

### EXAMPLE 58

Synthesis of a 3-mer having the 2-amino-1,5-pentanediol

- 75 -

### backbone segment

1-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2(phenylacetyl)-Amino-5-Phosphonic Acid-1,5-pentanediol Derivatized Resin is treated with 1-0dimethoxytrityl-2-N-Fmoc-2-amino-5-phosphonic acid-1,5pentanediol, morpholine, and phenylacetic acid as per the procedure of Example 38 and Example 126 to give a 3 mer with phenylacetyl bound to the amino groups and morpholine groups as the phosphoramidate substituent.

### EXAMPLE 59

10 General Procedure for Converting Aminodial Monomer Subunits to the H-Phosphonate Monoesters

N-Fmoc-5-Dimethoxytrityloxymethylpyrrolidine-3-0-Hydrogen Phosphonate Triethylammonium salt

Imidazole (6.81 g, 100 mmol) was dissolved in 400 ml dry CH3CN and cooled to 0 °C. Phosphorus trichloride (2.62 ml, 15 4.12 g, 30 mmol) was added dropwise, followed by triethylamine ( 21 ml, 15.2 g, 150 mmol). A thick slurry developed to which was added over 15 min a solution of  $\,$  N- ${\tt Fmoc-5-dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-3-hydroxypyrrolidine} \quad \textbf{(10)}$ mmol) in 50 ml CH3CN. Once the addition was complete, the 20 ice bath was removed and the solution stirred at RT for 30 The reaction was stopped by the addition of 100 mlPyridine and 10 ml water. The solvent was removed and the residue coevaporated with 100 ml Pyridine, then 100 ml toluene. The residue was then dissolved in 0.05M TEAB, 25 extracted (3X200 ml) with CH2Cl2, and the extract washed with 0.05M TEAB. The organic phase was dried with MgSO4 and concentrated under reduced pressure. The product was further purified by flash chromatography using a gradient of MeOH (1-10%) in CH2Cl2 + 0.5 % TEA. 30

### EXAMPLE 60

General Procedure for converting Aminodial Monomer Subunits

to the Succinate derivatives

N-Fmoc-5-Dimethoxytrityloxymethylpyrrolidine-3-0-Succinate

- 76 -

N-Fmoc-5-Dimethoxytrityloxymethylpyrrolidine (2.0 mmol), succinic anhydride (300 mg, 3.0 mmol), DMAP (1.0 mmol, 120 mg) and triethylamine (0.4 ml, 3.0 mmol) are dissolved in dichloromethane and stirred overnight. The solution is extracted with dichloromethane, washed with 0.1M citric acid, water, brine, dried and evaporated. The residue is filtered through a short pad of silica and used directly.

### EXAMPLE 61

10

15

20

25

N-Fmoc-5-Dimethoxytrityloxymethylpyrrolidine-Controlled Pore Glass (N-FMOC-5-DMT-hp-CPG)

N-Fmoc-5-Dimethoxytrityloxymethylpyrrolidine-3-0-Succinate is dissolved in dry dichloromethane (50 ml), DMAP added (250 mg, 2 mmol) followed by toluenediisocyanate (288 ul, 2.0 mmol) . The mixture is swirled for 10 min then  $10\ g$ LCAA-CPG is added followed by DIEA (2 mmol, 0,34 ml). suspension is kept in the dark and agitated periodically for 6-16 h. The solid is filtered, washed with dichloromethane and ether, then suspended in 80 ml pyridine + 20 ml water. After 1 h, the support is filtered, washed with dry pyridine (5X), dichloromethane (3X) , and suspended in 60 ml  $\,$ dichloromethane, to which 10 ml TEA, 10 ml acetic anhydride, 3 ml N-methylimidazole are added. After 1 h, the support is filtered, washed extensively with dichloromethane and ether and dried. The CPG is analyzed for loading by weighing a portion of CPG , dissolving in 0.1M toluene sulfonic acid and measuring the absorbance at 498 nm.

### 30 **EXAMPLE 62**

Deprotection of Backbone Segment Amino Combinatorial Site Protecting groups General Procedure

PCT/US96/09604

10

15

20

30

- 77 -

The solid support (1-10 umol) bearing an FMOC protected amine is washed with a 10 % (v/v) solution of piperidine in DMF for 15 seconds, and suspended in the piperidine solution for 15 minutes. The solvent is removed and a fresh portion of piperidine/DMF is added for a further 15 minutes. The solid support is then washed with several portions of DMF to remove all traces of piperidine.

Using this procedure the Fmoc protected backbone segment amino combinatorial site of the solid support bound N-Fmoc-5-dimethoxytrityloxymethylpyrrolidine of Example 61 is deprotected.

### EXAMPLE 63

# Coupling of Carboxylic acids to Backbone Segment Amino Combinatorial Sites General procedure

Deprotected backbone segment amino combinatorial sites are treated simultaneously with a solution of a carboxylic acid (0.4 mmol/ml) and diisopropylethylamine (0.8 mmol/ml) in DMF, and BOP reagent or HATU(0.4 mmol/ml) in DMF. A tenfold excess of reagents are added at the 10 umol scale level. The reaction is allowed to proceed for 30 minutes and a further ten equivalents of carboxylic acid and BOP is added. After 30 minutes, the solid support is washed with DMF until all the reagents are removed.

#### EXAMPLE 64

# 25 Removal of the DMT protecting group General procedure

Aminodiol monomeric subunits having dimethoxytrityl protecting group are deprotected using a solution of trichloroacetic acid (3%, w/v) in dichloromethane is passed over the solid support until the DMT cation color is completely gone. The solid support is washed with dichloromethane until no trace of acid remains.

15

20

25

30

#### EXAMPLE 65

# Coupling of Sulfonyl Chlorides to Backbone Segment Amino Combinatorial Site General procedure

To the free amine on solid support obtained by piperidine treatment of the FMOC protected backbone segment is added simultaneously a solution of a sulfonyl chloride (0.1 mmol/ml) and diisopropylethylamine (0.25 mmol/ml) in pyridine/CH3CN. A tenfold excess of reagents is added at the 10 umol scale level. The reaction is allowed to proceed for 30 minutes, and the solid support was washed with Pyridine/CH3CN until all the reagents are removed.

### EXAMPLE 66

# Coupling of acyl groups to Backbone Segment Amino Combinatorial Site General procedure

To the free amine on solid support are added simultaneously a solution of an activated acylating agent (0.1 mmol/ml) and diisopropylethylamine (0.25 mmol/ml) in Pyridine/CH<sub>3</sub>CN. A tenfold excess of reagents are added at the 10 umol scale level. The reaction is allowed to proceed for 30 minutes, the solid support is washed with Pyridine/CH<sub>3</sub>CN until all the reagents are removed. Groups useful for acylating the free amine combinatorial site include acid halides, acid fluorides, acid imidazolides, acid anhydrides, sulfonyl chlorides, chloroformates, isocyanates, isothiocyanates.

#### EXAMPLE 67

### Phosphoramidate Library Synthesis General procedures

The general procedures described below outline the methods for the preparation of phosphoramidate combinatorial libraries. All manipulations can be accomplished using an automated synthesizer to deliver solvents and reagents to a reaction vessel containing the reactants attached to a solid

Ď

10

15

20

25

30

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 79 -

support, usually controlled pore glass (CPG) or Tentagel The design of such synthesizers and the loading of the solid support allow the manipulations to be performed on scales ranging from 50 pmol to approximately 10 mmol if The manipulations can also be carried out manually by using a syringe with a glass frit as the reaction vessel, by drawing the appropriate solutions into the syringe. reactions described can be carried out on single compounds attached to the solid support, or on complex mixtures prepared by the technique of bead portioning/mixing. In brief, these techniques involve the addition of unique reagents to an equal number of separate portions of solid support. Once the individual reactions are complete, the portions of solid support are combined and mixed thoroughly as a slurry in an appropriate solvent and redivided into the number of portions required by the number of different reagents in the next step. In this way, a unique reagent is added to a mixture of compounds, to create all possible combinations of the different reagents.

Oxidation of H-Phosphonate Diester linkages To Form Phosphoramidate linkages having letters

Method A: Incorporation of Letters In Predetermined Sequence

The solid support (e.g. LCAA CPG) is derivatized with a first monomeric subunit or other group having a terminal reactive group capable of forming a covalent bond with a primary or secondary amine. Example 26 illustrates a non-aminodiol monomer subunit attached to a solid support and Example 45 illustrates attachment of an aminodiol monomer subunit to a solid support. When an aminodiol monomer subunit is derivatized to the solid support the amino group is deprotected using the general procedure of Example 62 and coupled with a letter having an optional tether as illustrated in Examples 36, 37, 63, and 65 (also see Examples

20

25

30

35

122-130). The hydroxyl protecting group is then removed as illustrated in Example 64 and the next desired aminodiol monomer subunit having a phosphonic acid monoester group on one of the hydroxyls is condensed onto the terminal free hydroxyl of the derivatized solid support as per the procedure of Example 48. The resulting phosphonic acid diester is reacted with a large molar excess of a primary or secondary amine in carbon tetrachloride/ pyridine to form the phosphoramidate having a letter attached thereto. The amine letter is added in a solution of carbon tetrachloride/pyridine. The solid support is washed with pyridine. A second treatment with a large molar excess of the amine letter in carbon tetrachloride/pyridine followed

by shaking will ensure efficient oxidation to the

15 phosphoramidate. The amino protecting group on the second
backbone substituent is removed using piperidine treatment
and the free amino is coupled to a letter as above. In this
case the procedures give an oligomeric compound two units in
length.

Additional functionalized monomer units can be added by repeating the following steps as often as desired: 1) removal of the oxygen protecting group, 2) coupling of an additional scaffold phosphonate monoester, 3) oxidation of the phosphonate diester with carbon tetrachloride in the presence of the desired amine letter, 4) removal of the nitrogen protecting group on the last scaffold monomer unit, 5) functionalization of the amino group with the desired functionality.

The oxidative incorporation of letters to form phosphoramidate linkages can be performed stepwise or all at once for a uniform substitution of letters. For the addition of two adjacent like letters in the oligomeric structure, the oxidation step can delayed until the backbone to support all of these letters is synthesized and all H phosphonate sites that will bear this letter are then oxidized simultaneously.

15

20

25

30

35

The above steps are repeated until all of the letters of the oligomer have been added. All letters are predetermined in this method of synthesis. Upon completion of the addition of the last of the desired length and configuration of the oligomeric compound, the solid support is washed with pyridine/acetonitrile and the phosphoramidate is cleaved from the resin by treatment with concentrated ammonium hydroxide at room temperature for 3 hours. Evaporation of the supernatant and purification of the phosphoramidate on an RP-18 HPLC column yields the final oligomer.

# Method B: Incorporation of Phosphoramidate Letters in a Random Sequence

The method of oligomer synthesis as described above in Method A is repeated to synthesize the oligomer of desired length. To randomize the amine letters on the oligomer, the method of adding a letter as described in Method a above is followed except that, for randomization, the amine letters in carbon tetrachloride and a suitable cosolvent are added as a mixture, preferably one normalized for relative reactivity. Random distribution of amine letters from this mixture of amine letters is verified experimentally by treatment of an oligomer, which has been previously treated with a mixture of amine letters and subsequently worked up and purified, with 10% aqueous formic acid at 50-70 °C to release the amine letters. The actual percentages of incorporation of the individual amine letters is then determined by HPLC analysis of the reaction mixture and the relative individual rates are calculated. Having once determined the relative rates, in further iteration of the sequences, the concentration of amine letters within a mixture is adjusted to reflect these rate differences.

In a variation of this method of randomization, in a five mer all sites of which are to be randomized, the oxidation is effected simultaneously. The five mer backbone is synthesized as above and a mixture of the letters added.

20

Upon completion of the backbone synthesis, the oxidation of amine letters is effected on all five sites as a single step.

- 82 -

In a further variation of this method of randomization, upon completion of the synthesis of the first backbone segment, the resin is split into five portion and each portion is individually oxidized with one of the amine The individual portions of the resin are recombined and a further backbone segment is attached thereby extending the oligomeric compound a further unit. The resin is then again split, and the individual portion each oxidized with one of the amine letter. This cycle is repeated to complete the synthesis.

Coupling of letters to the free amino positions is performed as in Method A for a predetermined sequence or Method B for a random sequence.

# Method C: Incorporation of Amine Letters in Fixed/random Sequence

Combining methods A and B above can be used to fixcertain positions while randomizing other positions as the oligomeric compound is synthesized. This method is further used in combination with a  $SURF^{TM}$  combinatorial strategy.

The following is a representative list of amine letters: allylamine

3,3-Dimethylaminopropylamine

1-Phenyl-1,3,8-Triazaspiro[4.5]decan-4-one 25

Azetidine

Benzylamine

Butylamine

L-(-)-2-Aminocaprolactam

Heptamethyleneimine 30

cyclopropylamine

Diethylamine

Dimethoxyethylamine

2,5-Dimethyl-N-phenylpiperazine

Methylaminomethyl-1,3-dioxolane 35

WO 96/40672

N-Acetyl Ethylenediamine 3-Aminopropyl Imidazole Methoxyethylamine Morpholine

- 5 3-Aminopropyl Morpholine
  Isonipecotamide
  Piperonylamine
  2-Aminomethylpyridine
  Piperidine
- Piperidone ethylene ketal
  2-Aminoethyl-1-methylpyrrolidine
  N(2-Pyridyl)piperazine
  Piperonylpiperazine
  3-Isopropoxypropylamine
- 15 Piperazine
  Thienylethylamine
  3-Trifluoromethoxybenzylamine
  Tryptamine
  Tetrahydrofurfurylamine

## 20 EXAMPLE 68

25

30

# 1-Acetyl Thymine/Benzylamine Phosphoramidate Oligomer Synthesis

A solid support is derivatized with 2-O-(dimethoxy-trityl)ethylsuccinate half ester as in Example 26. The DMT protecting group is removed using the standard method of Example 64. 4-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2-N-Fmoc-aminobutan-1-ol is treated with PCl<sub>3</sub> as per Example 28 to form the phosphonic acid which is condensed onto the derivatized resin as in Example 38. The Fmoc amino protecting group is removed as per Example 4 and (N1-thymine)-2-acetic acid (Example 7) is coupled to the resulting free amino as per the method of Example 38. The above methods of examples 64, 28, 37 and 38 are repeated until six of the above phosphonic acid residues

are incorporated. The resulting six mer is treated using the procedures of Example 67, with a large excess of benzylamine in carbon tetrachloride/pyridine. The solid support is shaken for 15 minutes and the supernatant is removed by filtration and then washed with pyridine. A second treatment with a large excess of benzylamine in carbon tetrachloride/ pyridine followed by shaking will insure efficient oxidation to the phosphoramidate. The resin is washed with pyridine/acetonitrile and then the phosphoramidate is cleaved from the resin by a treatment with concentrated ammonium 10 hydroxide at room temperature for 3 hours. Evaporation of the supernatant and purification of the phosphoramidate on an RP-18 HPLC column will yield the final oligomer. stepwise H phosphonate coupling efficiency is determined by measuring the absorbance of the trityl ion. The resulting 15 six mer will have a benzylamine at each of the phosphoramidate linkages and will have an acetylthymine group at each of the backbone segment amino combinatorial sites.

### EXAMPLE 69

# 20 Hydrogen phosphonate Coupling General Procedure

A portion of solid support (CPG or other polymeric support e.g. TentaGel) derivatized with a DMT protected alcohol linked via a succinate linker (1µmol) is loaded into a DNA synthesis column, and attached to an automated DNA synthesizer programmed to perform the following functions:

- Wash with dichloromethane;
- 2) Treat with 3% trichloroacetic acid in dichloromethane to remove the DMT protecting group;
- 3) Wash with dichloromethane and  $CH_3CN/Pyridine$  (1:1);
- 30 4) Coupling: addition of alternating portions of 0.2 M Adamantoyl chloride or Pivaloyl chloride in CH<sub>3</sub>CN/Py (1:1) and 0.05 M H-phosphonate monomer in CH<sub>3</sub>CN/Py (1:1) for 1 min;
  - 5) Wash with CH<sub>3</sub>CN/Pyridine (1:1);
  - 6) Stop and proceed to an oxidation procedure for oxidation

10

20

30

of each linkage independently or repeat steps 1 through 5 to add additional monomer subunits prior to oxidation.

The product of this sequence of reactions is an H-phosphonate diester, which is oxidized by one of several methods including those described below.

# Oxidation procedure 1: Phosphodiester

The solid support-bound H-phosphonate diester is treated (manually or automatically) with equal volumes of solution A (0.2 M  $I_2$  in THF) and solution B (N-methylmorpholine/ $H_2O/THF$  1:1:8) for 5 min, followed by equal volumes of solution A and solution C (TEA/ $H_2O/THF$  1:1:8) for 5 min, followed by washing with CH<sub>3</sub>CN/Py (1:1).

# Oxidation procedure 2: Phosphorothioate

The solid support-bound H-phosphonate diester is treated (manually or automatically) with a solution of  $S_8$  in  $CS_2/Lutidine$  for 30 min. The solid support is then washed with CH<sub>3</sub>CN/Py (1:1).

# Oxidation procedure 3: Phosphoramidate

The solid support-bound H-phosphonate diester is treated (manually or automatically) with a solution of the required amine (10 % V/V) in CCl $_4$ /Pyridine 1:1 for 15-30 min. The solid support is then washed with CH $_3$ CN/Py (1:1).

### EXAMPLE 70

# Combinatorial library synthesis having phosphoramidate

### 25 linkages

N-Fmoc-5-dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-3-hydroxypyrrolidine (Example 2), 1-O-dimethoxytrityl-N-Fmoc-2-amino-1,3-propanediol (Example 32), and 4-O-dimethoxytrityl-2-N-Fmoc-aminobutan-1-ol (Example 42) are treated in separate reactions with succinic anhydride as per example 60 to give the corresponding succinyl derivatives. In a separate set of reactions each of the above aminodiol monomer subunits are

WO 96/40672

10

15

20

25

30

35

treated with PCl<sub>3</sub> as per Example 28 to give the corresponding H-phosphonate monoesters. A solid support is divided into three equal portions and each portion is treated with one of the succinyl derivatized aminodiol monomer subunits as per Example 61. The solid support is combined and the amino protecting groups are removed as per the general procedure of Example 62. The solid support is washed with pyridine/acetonitrile, dried, and redivided into three equal parts.

Each portion of the solid support is treated with one of (N1-Thymine)-2-acetic acid (Example 7), (N6-benzoyl-9-adenine)-2-acetic acid (Example 11), or N-4-benzoyl-1-cytosine-2-acetic acid (Example 13) following the general procedure of Example 63. The procedure of mixing, drying and redividing the solid support is repeated.

Each portion of solid support is treated with one of the H-phosphonate monoesters above as per the procedure of Example 30, to form the H-phosphonate diesters. The procedure of mixing, drying and redividing the solid support is repeated. Each portion of the solid support is treated with a large molar excess of one of benzylamine, 2-(2-aminoethyl)-1-methylpyrrolidine, or piperonyl amine in carbon tetrachloride/pyridine. The solid support is shaken for 15 minutes and the supernatant is removed by filtration and then washed with pyridine. A second treatment with a large excess of each amine letter in carbon tetrachloride/pyridine followed by shaking will insure efficient oxidation to the phosphoramidate. The solid support is combined and the amino protecting groups are removed as above. The solid support is washed with pyridine/acetonitrile, dried, and redivided.

Each portion of the solid support is treated with one of (N1-Thymine)-2-acetic acid (Example 7), (N6-benzoyl-9-adenine)-2-acetic acid (Example 11), or N-4-benzoyl-1-cytosine-2-acetic acid (Example 13) following the general procedure of Example 63. The procedure of mixing, deblocking the hydroxyl protecting group as per Example 64, drying and

20

25

30

redividing the solid support is repeated.

Each portion of solid support is treated with one of the H-phosphonate monoesters above as per the procedure of Example 69 to form the H-phosphonate diesters. The procedure of mixing, drying and redividing the solid support is repeated. Each portion of the solid support is treated with a large molar excess of one of benzylamine, 2-(2-aminoethyl)-1-methylpyrrolidine, or piperonyl amine in carbon tetrachloride/pyridine. The solid support is shaken for 15 minutes and the supernatant is removed by filtration and then washed with pyridine. A second treatment with a large excess of each amine letter in carbon tetrachloride/pyridine followed by shaking will insure efficient oxidation to the phosphoramidate. The solid support is combined and the amino protecting groups are removed as above. The solid support is washed with pyridine/acetonitrile, dried, and redivided.

Each portion of the solid support is treated with one of (N1-Thymine)-2-acetic acid (Example 7), (N6-benzoyl-9-adenine)-2-acetic acid (Example 11), or N-4-benzoyl-1-cytosine-2-acetic acid (Example 13) following the general procedure of Example 63.

The resulting oligomeric compounds are cleaved from the solid support by a treatment with concentrated ammonium hydroxide at room temperature for 3 hours. Evaporation of the supernatant and purification of the phosphoramidate linked oligomeric compounds on an RP-18 HPLC column will yield the final combinatorial libraries consisting of all the possible oligomeric compounds that can be prepared using the three aminodiol monomer subunits, the three functional groups, and the three amines.

#### EXAMPLE 71

Combinatorial library synthesis having phosphodiester or phosphorothicate linkages

10

15

A three mer is synthesized using the reagents and procedures of Example 68 except that oxidation of the H-phosphonate diester linkage is accomplished using the procedures illustrated in Example 69, Procedure 1 or 2, to give either uniform phosphodiester or uniform phosphorothioate linkages.

### EXAMPLE 72

Combinatorial library synthesis having mixed phosphodiester, phosphorothicate, and phosphoramidate linkages

A three mer is synthesized using the reagents and procedures of Example 68 except that oxidation of the H-phosphonate diester linkage is accomplished by dividing the solid support into three equal portions and using the procedures illustrated in Example 69, Procedure 1, 2, or 3 to give phosphodiester, phosphorothioate, or phosphoramidate linkages.

### EXAMPLE 73

# Standard Oligomer Coupling Cycle Using Standard DNA Synthesis Protocols

The oligomeric compounds of the invention are 20 synthesized on an automated DNA synthesizer (Applied Biosystems model 380B) as is done with standard oligonucleotides using standard phosphoramidate chemistry with oxidation by iodine (see, Oligonucleotide Synthesis, A Practical Approach, M. J. Gait., ed., Oxford University Press, New York, 1990). 25 For phosphorothicate oligomeric compounds, the standard oxidation bottle is replaced by 0.2 M solution of 3H-1,2benzodithiole-3-one 1,1-dioxide in acetonitrile for the step wise thiation of the phosphite linkages. The thiation wait step is increased to 68 sec and is followed by the capping 30 step. After cleavage from the CPG column and deblocking in concentrated ammonium hydroxide at 55 °C (18 hours), the

oligomeric compounds can be purified by precipitation twice out of 0.5 M NaCl solution with 2.5 volumes ethanol or by HPLC chromatography using a RP-18 column. Analytical gel electrophoresis is effected in 20% acrylamide, 8 M urea, 454 mM Tris-borate buffer, pH = 7.0. Phosphodiester and phosphorothioate oligomeric compounds are judged from

- 89 -

### EXAMPLE 74

10

15

20

# Synthesis of Sequence Specific Pyrrolidine Oligomer Having Phosphodiester Linkages

polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis as to material length.

"Aforvirsen" is an anti-papilloma agent having the nucleobase sequence:

TTG CTT CCA TCT TCC TCG TC.

A pyrrolidine phosphodiester linked oligomer of this preselected sequence is prepared using the T, A, C and G reagents from Examples 7, 11, 13 and 14, respectively, as per the procedure of Example 73 using iodine as the oxidation reagent to give the phosphodiester linked oligomeric compound having the "Aforvirsen" sequence.

### EXAMPLE 75

Synthesis of Sequence Specific Pyrrolidine Oligomer Having Phosphorothicate Linkages

A pyrrolidine phosphorothioate-linked oligomer of
sequence TTG CTT CCA TCT TCC TCG TC is prepared using the T,
A, C and G reagents from Examples 7, 11, 13 and 14,
respectively, as per the procedure of Example 73 using 3H1,2-benzodithiole-3-one 1,1-dioxide as the oxidation reagent
to give the phosphorothioate linked oligomeric compound.

## 30 Example 76

Preparation of N-(2-[1-Tyrosinyl]-acetyl)-2-hydroxymethyl-pyrrolidine-4-morpholinophosphoramidate-thymidine-

15

20

25

30

35

# phosphodiester-thymidine Trimer.

A controlled pore glass resin derivatized with a 3'-5' phosphodiester linked dimer of thymidine [5'-DMT-O-T-O-P(=O)-O-T-CPG] was synthesized in a standard manner. Two aliquots of this resin (each 24.6 mg, 47.5 mmole/g resin) were separately detritylated using 3 % trichloroacetic acid in dichloromethane and then sequentially washed with anhydrous acetonitrile and pyridine. Each was vigorously agitated with 1 mL of a solution of the N-(2-[1-Tyrosinyl]acetyl)-2-0dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-pyrrolidine-3-H-phosphonate monomer (25 mM) in adamantoyl chloride (50 mM) and pyridine for five minutes. The resins were then washed repeatedly with anhydrous pyridine and blown dry with argon gas. column was added 1 mL of iodine/pyridine/water (2/90/8) solution and agitated vigorously; to the second column was added 1 mL of morpholine/carbon tetrachloride/pyridine (1/5/5) solution and both were agitated for 30 minutes. columns were subsequently washed with pyridine and acetonitrile and then blown dry with argon gas. Products were cleaved from the CPG by treatment with 1 mL of concentrated ammonium hydroxide for 30 minutes. The ammonia solutions were evaporated to dryness and then treated with 80 % acetic acid in water for 30 minutes to remove the trityl group An aliquot of the solution from the first column exhibited a single peak in an HPLC analysis (27.8 min, Vyadec C-18, 260 nm, linear gradient of ammonium acetate (pH 7)acetonitrile, 0-75 % acetonitrile in 52 minutes) corresponding to the phosphodiester trimer. A similar analysis yielded a pair of HPLC peaks (39.7 and 39.9 min) corresponding to the phosphoramidate diastereomeric trimers.

In a parallel set of experiments using the HPP-Tyrosine H-phosphonate monomer and the 5'-DMT-O-T-O-P (=0)-O-T-CPG, the coupled resins were oxidized to the phosphodiester trimer or to the phosphoramidate trimer using dimethylamine/carbon tetrachloride. These experiments yielded the phosphodiester

10

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 91 -

trimer and the unresolved dimethylamine phosphoramidate trimers at 12.4 min by an HPLC analysis, under the conditions described before.

### EXAMPLE 77

5 (5R) -O-(t-Butyldimethylsilyl)-(3R)-Hydroxypiperidine

N-Benzyl-(5R)-O-(t-butyldimethylsilyl)-(3R)-hydroxy-piperidine (J. Cossy, C. Dumas, P. Michel, D. Gomez Pardo, Tetrahedron Lett., 1995, 36, 549) is dissolved in ethanol. A catalytic amount of 10% Pd/C is added, and the solution shaken under 3 ATM  $\rm H_2$ . Once the starting material is consumed, the catalyst is filtered and the solvent removed under reduced pressure. The product is used without further purification.

### EXAMPLE 78

N-(FMOC)-(5R)-O-(t-Butyldimethylsilyl)-(3R)-Hydroxypiperidine

(5R)-O-(t-butyldimethylsilyl)-3R)-hydroxypiperidine and

Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (1.3 eq) are suspended in H<sub>2</sub>O/Dioxane (1:1) (0.1M).

Fluorenylmethyl chloroformate (1.1 eq) in toluene is added dropwise. The temperature of the reaction is not allowed to

rise above 25 °C during the addition. The mixture is stirred vigorously overnight, acidified to pH 3 with concentrated HCl, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic extract is washed with brine. The solution is dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed in vacuo. The product is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography.

### EXAMPLE 79

N-(FMOC)-(3R)-O-Dimethoxytrityl-(5R)-O-(t-Butyldimethylsilyl)-Piperidine

N-(FMOC)-(5R)-O-(t-butyldimethylsilyl)-(3R)-

hydroxypiperidine is coevaporated with dry pyridine, and redissolved in dry pyridine (0.1M). Dimethoxytrityl chloride

10

15

(1.2 eq) is added in portions over 15 minutes, and the solution stirred at RT overnight. Methanol is then added (10 ml), and the solvent removed under reduced pressure. The resulting gum is redissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with 0.1 M citric acid, NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine, dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and evaporated. The product is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography.

### EXAMPLE 80

# N-(FMOC)-(3R)-O-Dimethoxytrityl-(5R)-Hydroxypiperidine

 $N-(FMOC)-(3R)-O-dimethoxytrityl-(5R)-O-(t-butyldimethylsilyl)-Piperidine is dissolved in THF (0.1M), and added to a solution of tetrabutylammonium fluoride (3 eq) and acetic acid (9 eq) in THF. The solution is stirred until the starting material is consumed. The reaction is quenched with <math>NaHCO_3$ , extracted with diethyl ether, washed with  $NaHCO_3$ , brine and dried with  $MgSO_4$ .

### EXAMPLE 81

# N-(FMOC)-(3R)-O-Dimethoxytrityl-Piperidine-(5R)-O-Hydrogen Phosphonate Triethylammonium salt

20 The title compound is prepared from N-(FMOC)-(3R)-O-dimethoxytrityl-(5R)-hydroxypiperidine using the general procedure of Example 59.

### EXAMPLE 82

# N-(FMOC)-(3R)-O-Dimethoxytrityl-Piperidine-(5R)-O-Succinate

The title compound is prepared from N-(FMOC)-(3R)-O-dimethoxytrityl-(5R)-hydroxypiperidine using the general procedure of Example 60.

### EXAMPLE 83

N-(FMOC)-(3R)-O-Dimethoxytrityl-Piperidine-(5R)-O-Succinyl-

30 CPG

25

- 93 -

The title compound is prepared from N-(FMOC)-(3R)-0dimethoxytrityl-piperidine-(5R)-O-succinate using the general procedure of Example 61.

### EXAMPLE 84

(2S)-Carboxyethyl-Pyrrolidine-5-carboxylic acid-4-5 methylphenylthioester

The title compound is obtained as a mixture of epimers at C5 from N-BOC-Pyroglutamate ethyl ester using the method of J. Ezquerra, A., Rubio, C., Pedregal, G., Sanz, J. H., Rodriguez, J. L., Garcia R., Tetrahedron Lett. 1993, 34, 4989.

### EXAMPLE 85

10

15

20

30

N-FMOC-(2S)-Carboxyethyl-Pyrrolidine-5-carboxylic acid-4methylphenylthioester

(2S)-Carboxyethyl-pyrrolidine-5-carboxylic acid-4methylphenylthioester and  $Na_2CO_3$  (1.3 eq) are suspended in  $H_2O/Dioxane$  (1:1) (0.1 M). Fluorenylmethyl chloroformate (1.1 eq) in toluene is added dropwise. The temperature of the reaction is not allowed to rise above 25 °C during the addition. The mixture is stirred vigorously overnight, acidified to pH 3 with concentrated HCl, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic extract is washed with brine. The solution is dried with MgSO4, filtered and the solvent removed in vacuo. The product is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography. 25

# EXAMPLE 86

N-FMOC-(2S)-Carboxyethyl-(5R)-Hydroxymethyl-Pyrrolidine and N-FMOC-(2S)-Carboxyethyl-(5S)-Hydroxymethyl-Pyrrolidine

The mixture of thioesters from the Example 85 are dissolved in THF and treated with  $Pd(OAc)_2$  and triethylsilane. Once the thioesters are reduced to the aldehyde, the solution

10

15

25

is cooled to 0 °C, and 1 eq LiBH<sub>4</sub> added. The reaction is stopped by the addition of acetic acid. The solvent is removed, and the residue extracted with ethyl acetate, washed with 5% NaHCO3, brine and dried with MgSO4. The products (epimers) are separated by silica gel flash column chromatography.

### EXAMPLE 87

# N-FMOC-(2S)-Carboxyethyl-(5R)-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-Pyrrolidine

N-FMOC-(2S)-carboxyethyl-(5R)-hydroxymethyl-pyrrolidine is coevaporated with dry pyridine, and redissolved in dry pyridine (0.1M). Dimethoxytrityl chloride (1.2 eq) is added in portions over 15 minutes, and the solution stirred at RT overnight. Methanol is then added (10 ml), and the solvent removed under reduced pressure. The resulting gum is redissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with 0.1 M citric acid, NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine, dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and evaporated. The residue is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography.

### EXAMPLE 88

# N-FMOC-(2S)-Hydroxymethyl-(5R)-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-Pyrrolidine

N-FMOC-(2S)-carboxyethyl-(5R)-dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-pyrrolidine is dissolved in dry THF, cooled to 0 °C, and 2 eq LiBH4 is added. The solution is warmed to room temperature until the starting material is consumed. The reaction is quenched with ethyl acetate, and washed with 0.1 M citric acid,  $NaHCO_3$ , brine, dried with  $MgSO_4$  and evaporated. The product is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography.

### 30 EXAMPLE 89

N-FMOC-(5R)-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-Pyrrolidine-(2S)-

15

20

25

# oxymethyl-Hydrogen Phosphonate Triethylammonium salt

The title product is prepared from N-FMOC-(2S)-Hydroxymethyl-(5R)-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-Pyrrolidine using the general procedure of Example 59.

- 95 -

### 5 EXAMPLE 90

N-FMOC-(5R)-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-Pyrrolidine-(2S)-Oxymethyl Succinate

The title product is prepared from N-FMOC-(2S)-Hydroxymethyl-(5R)-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-Pyrrolidine using the general procedure of Example 60.

#### EXAMPLE 91

N-FMOC-(5R)-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-Pyrrolidine-(2S)-Oxymethyl-Succinyl-CPG

The title product is prepared from N-FMOC-(5R)-dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-pyrrolidine-(2S)-Oxymethyl Succinate using the general procedure of Example 61.

#### EXAMPLE 92

N-FMOC-(2S)-Carboxyethyl-(5S)-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-Pyrrolidine

N-FMOC-(2S)-Carboxyethyl-(5S)-Hydroxymethyl-Pyrrolidine is coevaporated with dry pyridine, and redissolved in dry pyridine (0.1M). Dimethoxytrityl chloride (1.2 eq) is added in portions over 15 minutes and the solution is stirred at RT overnight. Methanol (10 ml) is then added and the solvent removed under reduced pressure. The resulting gum is redissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with 0.1 M citric acid, concentrated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, brine, dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and evaporated. The residue is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography.

N-FMOC-(2S)-Hydroxymethyl-(5S)-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-Pyrrolidine

N-FMOC-(2S)-carboxyethyl-(5S)-dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-pyrrolidine is dissolved in dry THF, cooled to 0 °C, and 2 eq LiBH<sub>4</sub> is added. The solution is warmed to room temperature until the starting material is consumed. The reaction is quenched with ethyl acetate, and washed with 0.1 M citric acid, concentrated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, brine, dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated. The product is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography.

### EXAMPLE 94

N-FMOC-(5S)-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-Pyrrolidine-(2S)oxymethyl-Hydrogen Phosphonate Triethylammonium salt

The title product is prepared from N-FMOC-(2S)
hydroxymethyl-(5S)-dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-pyrrolidine using
the general procedure of Example 59.

## EXAMPLE 95

N-FMOC-(5S)-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-Pyrrolidine-(2S)-Oxymethyl Succinate

20 The title product is prepared from N-FMOC-(2S)-Hydroxymethyl-(5S)-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-Pyrrolidine fusing the general procedure of Example 60.

## EXAMPLE 96

25

N-FMOC-(5S)-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-Pyrrolidine-(2S)-Oxymethyl-Succinyl-CPG

The title product is prepared from N-FMOC-(5S)-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-Pyrrolidine-(2S)-Oxymethyl Succinate using the general procedure of Example 61.

### EXAMPLE 97

30 N-FMOC-2,2'-Dihydroxyethylamine

Diethanolamine and Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (1.3 eq) are suspended in  $H_2O/Dioxane$  (1:1) (0.1M). Fluorenylmethyl chloroformate (1.1 eq) in toluene is added dropwise. The temperature of the reaction is not allowed to rise above 25 °C during the addition. The mixture is stirred vigorously overnight, acidified to pH 3 with concentrated HCl, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic extract is washed with brine, dried with MgSO4, filtered and the solvent removed in vacuo. The product is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography.

## EXAMPLE 98

10

15

# N-FMOC-2'-Hydroxyethyl-2-O-Dimethoxytritylethylamine

N-FMOC-2,2'-dihydroxyethylamine is coevaporated with dry pyridine, and redissolved in dry pyridine (0.1 M).

Dimethoxytrityl chloride (1.2 eq) is added in portions over 15 minutes, and the solution stirred at RT overnight. Methanol (10 ml) is then added and the solvent removed under reduced pressure. The resulting gum is redissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with 0.1 M citric acid, concentrated NaHCO3 solution, brine, dried with MgSO4, and evaporated. 20 residue is purified by silica gel flash column

### EXAMPLE 99

chromatography.

# N-FMOC-2-O-Dimethoxytritylethylamino-2'-O-Ethyl Hydrogen

#### 25 Phosphonate Triethylammonium salt

The title product is prepared from N-FMOC-2'-Hydroxyethyl-2-O-Dimethoxytritylethylamine using the general procedure of Example 59.

## EXAMPLE 100

#### N-FMOC-2,3-Propanediol 30

1-Aminopropanediol and  $Na_2CO_3$  (1.3 eq) are suspended in

20

25

30

- 98 -

H<sub>2</sub>O/Dioxane (1:1) (0.1 M). Fluorenylmethyl chloroformate (1.1 eq) in toluene is added dropwise. The temperature of the reaction is not allowed to rise above 25 °C during the addition. The mixture is stirred vigorously overnight, acidified to pH 3 with concentrated HCl, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic extract is washed with brine, dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed in vacuo. The product is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography.

#### 10 **EXAMPLE 101**

### N-FMOC-2-Hydroxy-3-O-Dimethoxytrityl-Propane

N-FMOC-2,3-Propanediol is coevaporated with dry pyridine, and redissolved in dry pyridine (0.1 M). Dimethoxytrityl chloride (1.2 eq) is added in portions over 15 minutes and the solution stirred at RT overnight. Methanol (10 ml) is then added and the solvent removed under reduced pressure. The resulting gum is redissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with 0.1 M citric acid, concentrated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, brine, dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and evaporated. The residue is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography.

### EXAMPLE 102

# Derivatization of Backbone Segment Amino Combinatorial Site to form Ureas General Procedure

To the free amine on solid support is added a solution of carbonyl diimidazole (0.1 mmol/ml) in DMF. A tenfold excess of reagent is added at the 10 umol scale level. The reaction is allowed to proceed for 30 min, and the reagent removed with DMF. A solution of the desired amine in DMF (10% v/v) is then added. After 30 minutes the solid support is washed with DMF until all the reagents are removed to give the urea derivatized backbone segment amino combinatorial

site.

### EXAMPLE 103

### N-Fmoc-3,4-Trans-Dicarboxymethylpyrrolidine

Dimethylfumarate (38.7 g, 268 mmol) was dissolved in 1 l 5 CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, and trifluoroacetic acid added (3 ml, 40 mmol). Azomethine ylide precursor N-Benzyl-N-Methoxymethyl-N-(Trimethylsilylmethyl) -amine was added dropwise with stirring (60.4 g, 255 mmol). The solution was stirred overnight at RT. The solvent was removed and the crude product was redissolved in 1.5 l methanol. 300 ml 1 N HCl was added, the 10 solution degassed with Ar, and 10 g 10% Pd/C added. H- was bubbled through then the solution stirred under a H2 balloon until the material was consumed (24 hr). The catalyst was filtered, the solvent removed and the residue redissolved in 15 500 ml  $H_2O$  and 500 ml dioxane to which was added 32 g (300 mmol) Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>. A solution of Fmoc-Cl (66 g, 255 mmol) in 500 ml dioxane was added dropwise. The solution was stirred 16 h, acidified to pH 3 and the solvent evaporated. The residue was extracted with EtOAc, washed with water , brine dried

with MgSO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated. 92 g title product was obtained.

### EXAMPLE 104

### N-Fmoc-3,4-Trans-Dihydroxymethylpyrrolidine

N-Fmoc-3,4-Trans-Dicarboxymethylpyrrolidine (92 g, 225 mmol) was dissolved in 1000 ml THF, and 250 ml LiBH<sub>4</sub> (2M in THF, 25 Aldrich) was added with cooling (exothermic). The solution was stirred at RT 2 hrs and carefully quenched with 50% HCl to pH 2. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was extracted with EtOAc (2 X 500 ml), washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine, and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated. 78.6 g crude product was obtained (100 %). The product was recrystallized from 300 ml acetonitrile to give 60 g

#### EXAMPLE 105

N-Fmoc-3-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-4-hydroxymethylpyrrolidine N-Fmoc-3,4-Trans-Dihydroxymethylpyrrolidine was dissolved in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and pyridine (9:1), cooled to 0 °C and DMT-Cl added in portions (1.0 eq). The solution was stirred overnight at 0 °C. The reaction was quenched with MeOH, evaporated and excess solvent removed by azeotropic distillation with toluene. The product was redissolved in EtOAc, washed with 5% citric acid, NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>.

Purification was achieved by silica gel flash column chromatography, using a gradient of from 0 to 3% methanol, in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The product was obtained in 50% yield, along with 25% ditritylated material which is conserved and recycled, and 25% unreacted starting material.

### 15 **EXAMPLE 106**

N-FMOC-trans-3-(oxymethyl)-4-(Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl)-Pyrrolidine Hydrogen Phosphonate Triethylammonium salt

The title product is prepared from N-Fmoc-3-Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-4-hydroxymethylpyrrolidine using the general procedure of Example 59.

#### EXAMPLE 107

N-FMOC-trans-3-(oxymethyl)-4-(Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl)-Pyrrolidine Succinate

The title product is prepared from N-FMOC-trans-3-(Hydroxymethyl)-4-(Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl)-Pyrrolidine using the general procedure of Example 60.

#### EXAMPLE 108

N-FMOC-trans-3-(oxymethyl)-4-(Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl)-Pyrrolidine Succinyl CPG

The title product is prepared from N-FMOC-trans-3- (Hydroxymethyl)-4-(Dimethoxytrityloxymethyl)-Pyrrolidine

20

- 101 -

using the general procedure of Example 61.

### EXAMPLE 109

### N-CBZ-cis-4-Amino-2-cyclopenten-1-ol

The product is prepared by the method of A. R. Ritter, 5 M. J. Miller, Tetrahedron Lett. 1994, 35, 9379.

#### EXAMPLE 110

### N-CBZ-cis-4-Amino-2,3-oxocyclopentan-1-ol

N-CBZ-cis-4-Amino-2-cyclopenten-1-ol is dissolved in dichloromethane and meta chloroperbenzoic acid is added. The solution is stirred until the starting material disappears. The reaction is quenched by the addition of a 5% solution of sodium bisulfite, extracted with dichloromethane, washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried. The title compound is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography.

### 15 **EXAMPLE 111**

### N-CBZ-cis-4-Aminocyclopentan-1,2-diol

The epoxide of Example 110 is dissolved in THF, and treated with 2 eq LiBH<sub>4</sub> in the presence of a catalytic amount of Ti(OiPr)<sub>4</sub>. Stirring is continued until the reaction is complete. The reaction is diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with 0.1 M citric acid, NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine, dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated. The title compound is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography.

### EXAMPLE 112

### 25 N-CBZ-cis-4-Amino-2-O-dimethoxytritylcyclopentan-1-ol

N-CBZ-cis-4-Aminocyclopentan-1,2-diol is coevaporated with dry pyridine, and redissolved in dry pyridine (0.1 M). Dimethoxytrityl chloride (1.0 eq) is added in portions over 15 minutes and the solution stirred at RT overnight.

30 Methanol is then added (10 ml), and the solvent removed under

10

15

- 102 -

reduced pressure. The resulting gum is redissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with 0.1 M citric acid,  $NaHCO_3$ , brine, dried with  $MgSO_4$ , and evaporated. The title compound is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography.

### 5 EXAMPLE 113

# N-FMOC-cis-4-Amino-2-0-dimethoxytritylcyclopentan-1-ol

N-CBZ-cis-4-Amino-2-0-dimethoxytritylcyclopentan-1-ol is dissolved in ethanol and 10% Pd/C is added. The mixture is shaken under 1 ATM  $\rm H_2$  until all the material is consumed. The catalyst is filtered, the solvent removed. The residue and  $\rm Na_2CO_3$  (1.3 eq) are suspended in  $\rm H_2O/Dioxane$  (1:1) (0.1 M). Fluorenylmethyl chloroformate (1.1 eq) in toluene is added dropwise. The temperature of the reaction is not allowed to rise above 25 °C during the addition. The mixture is stirred vigorously overnight, acidified to pH 3 with concentrated HCl, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic extract is washed with brine, dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed in vacuo. The title compound is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography.

### 20 **EXAMPLE 114**

N-FMOC-cis-4-Amino-2-O-dimethoxytritylcyclopentan-1-O-Hydrogen Phosphonate triethylammonium salt

The title compound is prepared using the general procedure of Example 59.

### 25 **EXAMPLE 115**

N-CBZ-cis-4-Amino-2-cyclohexen-1-ol

The product is prepared by the method of A. R. Ritter, M. J. Miller, J. Org. Chem. 1994, 59, 4602.

### EXAMPLE 116

30 N-CBZ-cis-4-Amino-2,3-oxocyclohexan-1-ol

15

20

25

30

N-CBZ-cis-4-Amino-2-cyclohexen-1-ol is dissolved in dichloromethane and meta chloroperbenzoic acid is added. The solution is stirred until the starting material disappears. The reaction is quenched by the addition of a 5% solution of sodium bisulfite, extracted with dichloromethane, washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried. The title compound is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography.

#### EXAMPLE 117

# N-CBZ-cis-4-Aminocyclohexan-1,2-diol

The epoxide of the previous example is dissolved in THF, and treated with 2 eq LiBH<sub>4</sub> in the presence of a catalytic amount of Ti(OiPr)<sub>4</sub>. Stirring is continued until the reaction is complete. The reaction is diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with 0.1M citric acid, NaHCO3, brine, dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated. The title compound is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography.

## EXAMPLE 118

# N-CBZ-cis-4-Amino-2-O-dimethoxytritylcyclohexan-1-ol

N-CBZ-cis-4-aminocyclohexan-1,2-diol is coevaporated with dry pyridine, and redissolved in dry pyridine (0.1 M). Dimethoxytrityl chloride (1.0 eq) is added in portions over 15 min, and the solution stirred at RT overnight. Methanol is then added (10 ml), and the solvent removed under reduced pressure. The resulting gum is redissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with 0.1 M citric acid, NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine, dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and evaporated. The title compound is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography.

## EXAMPLE 119

# N-FMOC-cis-4-Amino-2-O-dimethoxytritylcyclohexan-1-ol

N-CBZ-cis-4-Amino-2-0-dimethoxytritylcyclohexan-1-ol is dissolved in ethanol and 10% Pd/C is added. The mixture is

15

20

25

30

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 104 -

shaken under 1 ATM H<sub>2</sub> until all the material is consumed. The catalyst is filtered, the solvent removed. The residue and Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (1.3 eq) are suspended in H<sub>2</sub>O/Dioxane (1:1) (0.1 M). Fluorenylmethyl chloroformate (1.1 eq) in toluene is added dropwise. The temperature of the reaction is not allowed to rise above 25 °C during the addition. The mixture is stirred vigorously overnight, acidified to pH 3 with concentrated HCl, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic extract is washed with brine, dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the solvent removed in vacuo. The title compound is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography.

### EXAMPLE 120

N-FMOC-cis-4-Amino-2-0-dimethoxytritylcyclohexan-1-0-Hydrogen Phosphonate triethylammonium salt

The title compound is prepared using the general procedure of Example 59.

### Example 121

Synthesis of a 4-mer having backbone segment amino combinatorial Backbone Segment Amino Combinatorial Sites combinatorialized with the aldehydes benzaldehyde, Aldrich-B133-4; m-tolualdehyde, Aldrich-T3,550-5; m-anisaldehyde, Aldrich-12,965-8; and 3-nitrobenzaldehyde, Aldrich-N1,084-5

## Method 1: Bead Splitting

A solid support is derivatized with 2-O-(dimethoxy-trityl)ethylsuccinate half ester as in Example 26. The DMT protecting group is removed using the standard method of Example 64. 4-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2-N-Fmoc-aminobutan-1-ol is treated with PCl<sub>3</sub> as per Example 28 to form the phosphonic acid which is condensed onto the derivatized resin as in Example 38. The Fmoc amino protecting group is removed as per Example 4 and the solid support is divided into 4 equal portions and each portion is reacted with one of benzalde-

20

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 105 -

hyde, m-tolualdehyde, m-anisaldehyde, or 3-nitrobenzaldehyde to effect coupling to the resulting free amino as per the method of Example 66 and the method of Look, G. C., et al., Tetrahedron Lett., 1995, 36, 2937-2940, and the portions of solid support recombined. The combined solid support is treated with a solution of  $NaCNBH_3$  or  $LiBH_4$  in tetrahydrofuran for 30 minutes followed by washing of the solid support by methanol. The above methods are repeated until four aminodiol monomer subunits are incorporated having an equal molar mixture of each aldehyde letter at each of the amino The resulting four mer is treated using the procedures of Example 67, with a large excess of benzylamine in carbon tetrachloride/pyridine. The solid support is shaken for 15 minutes and the supernatant is removed by filtration and then washed with pyridine. A second treatment with a large excess of benzylamine in carbon tetrachloride/ pyridine followed by shaking will insure efficient oxidation to the phosphoramidate. The resin is washed with pyridine/acetonitrile and then the phosphoramidate is cleaved from the resin by a treatment with concentrated ammonium hydroxide at room temperature for 3 hours. Evaporation of the supernatant and purification of the phosphoramidate on an RP-18 HPLC column will yield the final oligomer.

#### Method 2

25 A solid support is derivatized with 2-O-(dimethoxy-trityl)ethylsuccinate half ester as in Example 26. The DMT protecting group is removed using the standard method of Example 64. 4-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2-N-Fmoc-aminobutan-1-ol is treated with PCl<sub>3</sub> as per Example 28 to form the phosphonic acid which is condensed onto the derivatized resin as in Example 38. Following this procedure the four mer is synthesized in four iterations of the above. The Fmoc amino protecting groups are removed as per Example 4 and is reacted

10

15

concurrently, in one pot, with benzaldehyde, m-tolualdehyde, m-anisaldehyde, and 3-nitrobenzaldehyde. To effect this concurrent reaction 50 µmol of oligomeric compound attached to solid support is reacted with 50 µmol benzaldehyde, 50 μmol m-tolualdehyde, 50 μmol m-anisaldehyde, and 50 μmol 3nitrobenzaldehyde in triethyl orthoformate. The resulting imines are reduced as per the procedure of method 1 above. In this way the four amino combinatorial sites of each oligomeric compound attached to the solid support are combinatorialized utilizing a competitive mechanism involving a mixture of aldehydes. The resulting four mer is treated using the procedures of Example 67, with a large excess of benzylamine in carbon tetrachloride/pyridine. The solid support is shaken for 15 minutes and the supernatant is removed by filtration and then washed with pyridine. A second treatment with a large excess of benzylamine in carbon tetrachloride/ pyridine followed by shaking will insure efficient oxidation to the phosphoramidate. The resin is washed with pyridine/acetonitrile and then the phosphoramidate is cleaved from the resin by a treatment with concentrated ammonium hydroxide at room temperature for 3 hours. Evaporation of the supernatant and purification of the phosphoramidate on an RP-18 HPLC column will yield the final oligomer.

25

30

20

#### EXAMPLE 122

Synthesis of Combinatorial libraries using various selected aldehydes

Using the procedure of example 121 libraries are prepared from oligomeric compounds of the invention that are derivatized with one, two, three, four or more of the following aldehydes available from Aldrich Chemical Company, Inc., Milwaukee, WI. The Aldrich catalog number is given in the right hand column and the compound name is given in the

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 107 -

# left hand column:

Aromatic	aldehydes
----------	-----------

	Aron	Aromatic aidenydes			
		10793-5	Phenylacetaldehyde		
		D20425	Diphenylacetaldehyde		
	5	24582-8	Hydrocinnamaldehyde		
		24136-9	Phenylpropionaldehyde		
		28902-7	(+/-)-3-Phenylbutyraldehyde		
		28899-3	Alpha-amylcinnamaldehyde		
		16116-0	Alpha-bromocinnamaldehyde		
	10	26813-5	4-Stilbenecarboxaldehyde		
		B133-4	Benzaldehyde		
.250		11755-2	o-Tolualdehyde		
the transfer of the transfer o		25069-4	Alpha.alpha.alpha-trifluoro-o-tolualdehyde		
		F480-7	2-Fluorobenzaldehyde		
	15	12497-4	2-Chlorobenzaldehyde		
		B5700-1	2-Bromobenzaldehyde		
		10962-2	o-Anisaldehyde		
The state of the s		15372-9	2-Ethoxybenzaldehyde		
		N1080-2	2-Nitrobenzaldehyde		
STATE OF THE STATE	20	T3550-5	m-Tolualdehyde		
The second secon		19687-8	Alpha.alpha.alpha-trifluoro-m-tolualdehyde		
of the second se		F500-5	3-Fluorobenzaldehyde		
		C2340-3	3-Chlorobenzaldehyde		
		B5720-6	3-Chlorobenzaldehyde		
	25	12965-8	m-Anisaldehyde		
		34648-9	3-(Trifluoromethoxy)-benzaldehyde		
		34199-1	3-(1,1,2,2-Tetrafluoroethoxy)-benzaldehyde		
		H1980-8	3-Hydroxybenzaldehyde		
		N1084-5	3-Nitrobenzaldehyde		
•	30	11528-2	Isophthaldehyde		
		T3560-2	p-Tolualdehyde		
-		23363-3	4-Ethylbenzaldehyde		
2		13517-8	4-Isopropylbenzaldehyde		
ج <sub>.</sub>		22494-4	Alpha.alpha.alpha-trifluoro-p-tolualdehyde		
	35	12837-6	4-Fluorobenzaldehyde		

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 108 -

		11221-6	4-Chlorobenzaldehyde
		B5740-0	4-Bromobenzaldehyde
		A8810-7	p-Anisaldehyde
		17360-6	4-Ethoxybenzaldehyde
	5	33363-8	4-Propoxybenzaldehyde
		23808-2	4-Butoxybenzaldehyde
		37060-6	4-(Trifluoromethoxy)-benzaldehyde
		27486-0	Terephthaldehyde mono-(diethyl acetal)
		14408-8	4-Hydroxybenzaldehyde
	10	22277-1	4-(Methylthio)benzaldehyde
		10976-2	4-(Dimethylamino)benzaldehyde
		D8625-6	4-(Dimethylamino)benzaldehyde
		33851-6	4-(Dibutylamino)benzaldehyde
		29355-5	4-(3-Dimethylaminopropoxy)benzaldehyde
	15	13017-6	4-Nitrobenzaldehyde
		T220-7	Terephthaldicarboxaldehyde
		34252-1	3-Fluoro-2-methylbenzaldehyde
		34649-7	2-Fluoro-3-(trifluoromethyl)-benzaldehyde
		26514-4	2,3-Difluorobenzaldehyde
	20	26515-2	2,6-Difluorobenzaldehyde
There's		14124-0	2-Chloro-6-fluorobenzaldehyde
		D5650-0	2,6-Dichlorobenzaldehyde
		25483-5	2,3-Dichlorobenzaldehyde
		D13020-6	2,3-Dimethoxybenzaldehyde
	25	29250-8	2,6-Dimethoxybenzaldehyde
		31980-5	3-Fluorosalicylaldehyde
		12080-4	o-Vanillin
		18983-9	2,3-Dihydroxybenzaldehyde
		10604-6	2-Chloro-6-nitrobenzaldehyde
	30	16382-1	3-methoxy-2-nitrobenzaldehyde
		11750-1	2,6-Dinitrobenzaldehyde
•		15104-1	2,4-Dimethylbenzaldehyde
		15106-8	2,5-Dimethylbenzaldehyde
ñ,		37682-5	2-Chloro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzaldehyde
	35	26516-0	3,4-Difluorobenzaldehyde

- 109 -

			7 1 1 1
		26517-9	2,4-Difluorobenzaldehyde
		26518-7	2,5-Difluorobenzaldehyde
		30600-2	3-Chloro-4-fluorobenzaldehyde
		34807-4	2-Chloro-4-fluorobenzaldehyde
	5	33954-7	3-Bromo-3-fluorobenzaldehyde
		D5660-8	3,4-Dichlorobenzaldehyde
		14675-7	2,4-Dichlorobenzaldehyde
		15212-9	3-Methyl-p-anisaldehyde
		15558-6	3-Fluoro-p-anisaldehyde
	10	15429-6	5-Bromo-o-anisaldehyde
		D13040-0	2,4-Dimethoxybenzaldehyde
1700 na		D13060-5	2,5-Dimethoxybenzaldehyde
		14375-8	3,4-Dimethoxybenzaldehyde
and have a some of the sound some some some some some some some some		25275-1	3-Ethoxy-4-methoxybenzaldehyde
	15	P4910-4	Piperonal
		26459-8	1,4-Benzodioxan-6-carboxaldehyde
		31691-1	4-Hydroxy-3-methylbenzaldehyde
=		34606-3	2-Chloro-4-hydroxybenzaldehyde
Total Control		25975-6	5-Chlorosalicylaldehyde
Miller of the second of the se	20	13728-6	5-Bromosalicylaldehyde
41.1		14686-2	2-Hydroxy-5-methoxybenzaldehyde
And a		16069-5	2-Hydroxy-4-methoxybenzaldehyde
		14368-5	3-Hydroxy-4-methoxybenzaldehyde
		V110-4	Vanillin.
	25	12809-0	3-Ethoxy-4-hydroxybenzaldehyde
		34215-7	5-(Trifluoromethoxy)salicylaldehyde
		D10840-5	3,4-Dihydroxybenzaldehyde
		D10820-0	2,5-Dihydroxybenzaldehyde
		16863-7	2,4-Dihydroxybenzaldehyde
	30	22568-1	4-(Diethylamino)salicylaldehyde
		C5880-0	5-Chloro-2-nitrobenzaldehyde
-		13903-3	2-Chloro-5-nitrobenzaldehyde
		C5870-3	4-Chloro-3-nitrobenzaldehyde
Ã,		14432-0	4-Hydroxy-3-nitrobenzaldehyde
	35	15616-7	3-Hydroxy-4-nitrobenzaldehyde
			- <del>-</del>

- 110 -

PCT/US96/09604

		27535-2	2-Hydroxy-5-nitrobenzaldehyde
		H4810-7	5-Hydroxy-2-nitrobenzaldehyde
		D19360-7	2,4-Nitrobenzaldehyde
		29013-0	3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzaldehyde
	5	29017-3	3,5-Difluorobenzaldehyde
		13940-8	3,5-Dichlorobenzaldehyde
		36811-3	3,5-Dihydroxybenzaldehyde
		12269-2	3,5-Dimethoxybenzaldehyde
		36810-5	3,5-Dibenzyloxybenzaldehyde
	10	M680-8	Mesitaldehyde
		29233-8	2,3,5-Trichlorobenzaldehyde
dation.		13061-3	5-Bromoveratraldehyde
A STATE OF THE STA		13871-1	2,4,6-Trimethoxybenzaldehyde
		T6840-3	3,4,5-Trimethoxybenzaldehyde
	15	14039-2	3,5-Dimethyl-4-hydroxybenzaldehyde
		35768-5	2,6-Dimethyl-4-hydroxybenzaldehyde
		14040-6	3,5-Di-tert-butyl-4-hydroxybenzaldehyde
			hemihydrate
		26181-5	3,5-Dichlorosalicylaldehyde
	20	12213-0	3,5-Dibromosalicylaldehyde
-		28344-4	3,5-Diiodosalicylaldehyde
2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2		13060-5	5-Bromovanillin
		12948-8	5-Iodovanillin
		13879-7	4,6-Dimethoxysalicylaldehyde
	25	25871 <b>-</b> 7	5-Nitrovanillin
		S760-2	3,5-Dinitrosalicylaldehyde
		25959-4	2,5-Dimethyl- $p$ -anisaldehyde
		T6540-4	5-Bromo-2,4-dimethoxybenzaldehyde
		N2800-0	4-Nitrovanillin
*	30	27680-4	3,5-Dinitrosalicylaldehyde
		15205-6	2,5-Dimethyl- $p$ -anisaldehyde
		29251-6	5-Bromo-2,4-dimethoxybenzaldehyde
		15557-8	6-Bromoveratraldehyde
•.		13215-2	2,4,5-Trimethoxybenzaldehyde
	35	27960-9	6-Nitroveratraldehyde

- 111 -

		13765-0	6-Nitropiperonal
		27679-0	2,5-Dichloroterephthaldehyde
		33066-3	2,3,4-Trifluorobenzaldehyde
		29231-1	2,3,6-Trichlorobenzaldehyde
	5	15201-3	2,3-Dimethyl-p-anisaldehyde
		29627-9	2,4-Dimethoxy-3-methylbenzaldehyde
		15209-9	2,3,4-Trimethoxybenzaldehyde
		26084-3	2,3,4-Trihydroxybenzaldehyde
		32893-6	Tetrafluorobenzaldehyde
	10	10374-8	Pentafluorobenzaldehyde
		B3468-0	4-Biphenylcarboxaldehyde
		19175-2	3-Phenoxybenzaldehyde
		B2700-5	3-Benzloxybenzaldehyde
		19540-5	3-(4-Methylphenoxy)benzaldehyde
	15	19592-8	3-(4-tert-Butylphenoxy)benzaldehyde
there were the state of the sta		19539-1	3-[3-(Trifluoromethyl)phenoxy]benzaldehyde
		19530-8	3-(4-Chlorophenoxy)benzaldehyde
		19590-1	3-(3,4-Dichlorophenoxy)benzaldehyde
		19774-2	3-(3,5-Dichlorophenoxy)benzaldehyde
	20	19589-8	3-(4-Methoxyphonoxy)benzaldehyde
4D		21126-5	4-Phenoxybenzaldehyde
William William Communication		12371-4	4-Benzyloxybenzaldehyde
		16361-9	4-Benzyloxy-3-methoxybenzaldehyde
		16395-3	3-Benzyloxy-4-methoxybenzaldehyde
	25	34603-9	3-Methoxy-4-(4-nitrobenzyloxy)benzaldehyde
		D3600-3	3,4-Dibenzyloxybenzaldehyde
		N10-9	1-Naphthaldehyde
		N20-6	2-Naphthaldehyde
		15134-3	2-Methoxy-1-naphthaldehyde
-	30	10324-1	4-Methoxy-1-naphthaldehyde
*		H4535-3	2-Hydroxy-1-naphthaldehyde
_		27208-6	4-Dimethylamino-1-naphthaldehyde
		38201-9	2,3-Naphthalendicarboxaldehyde
*		15014-2	2-Fluorenecarboxaldehyde
	35	27868-8	9-Anthraldehyde

- 112 -

M2965-7 10-Methylanthracene-9-carboxaldehyde

		112505 7	To inclination and account to the contraction, as
		15211-0	10-Chloro-9-anthraldehyde
		P1160-3	Phenanthrene-9-carboxaldehyde
		14403-7	1-Pyrenecarboxaldehyde
			•
	5	Aliphatic alde	hydes
		25254-9	Formaldehylde
		11007-8	Acetaldehyde
		P5145-1	Propionaldehyde
		24078-8	Isobutyraldehyde
	10	T7150-1	Trimethylacetaldehyde
a title have		B10328-4	Butyraldehyde
		M3347-6	2-Methylbutyraldehyde
		11009-4	2-Ethylbutyraldehyde
		14645-5	Isovaleraldehyde
	15	35990-4	3,3-Dimethylbutyraldehyde
		11013-2	Valeraldehyde
5		25856-3	2-Methylvaleraldehyde
		D19050-0	2,4-Dimethylvaleraldehyde
		11560-6	Hexanal
	20	E2910-9	2-Ethylhexanal
		30355-0	3,5,5-Trimethylhexanal
		H212-0	Heptaldehyde
		0560-8	Octyl aldehyde
		N3080-3	Nonyl aldehyde
	25	12577-6	Decyl aldehyde
		U220-2	Undecylic aldehyde
		M8675-8	2-Methylundecanal
		D22200-3	Dodecyl aldehyde
		26923-9	Tridecanal
	30	T1000-6	Tetradecy aldehyde
. •		11022-1	Acrolein
		13303-5	Methacrolein
٠.		25614-5	2-Ethylacrolein
		25613-7	2-Butylacrolein

		13298-5	Crotonaldehyde
		19261-9	trans-2-Methyl-2-butenal
		29468-3	2-Ethyl-trans-2-butenal
		30407-7	3-Methyl-2-butenal
	5	26925-5	trans-2-pentenal
		29466-7	2-Methyl-2-pentenal
		29097-1	2,2-Dimethyl-4-pentenal
		13265-9	trans-2-Hexenal
		25176-3	trans-2-Heptenal
	10	30796-3	2,6-Dimethyl-5-heptenal
		26995-6	trans-2-Octenal
-contract.		34364-1	(R)-(+)-Citronellal
there there there there there there		37375-3	(S)-(-)-Citronellal
		25565-3	trans-2-Nonenal
2.5	15	37562-4	cis-4-Decenal
		36733-8	trans-4-Decenal
		13227-6	Undecylenic aldehyde
		24911-4	dis-9-hexadecenal
		27221-3	Cyclopropanecarboxaldehyde
The state of the s	20	10846-4	Cyclohexanecarboxaldehyde
		10933-9	Cyclooctanecarboxaldehyde
COMPANIENT CONTROL OF THE CONTROL OF T		30441-7	3-Cyclohexylpropionaldehyde
		T1220-3	Tetrahydrobenzaldehyde
		21829-4	(S)-(-)-Perillaldehyde
	25	26467-9	2,6,6-Trimethyl-1-cyclohexene-1-acetaldehyde
		10937-1	5-Norbornen-2-carboxaldehyde
		21824-3	
		37531-4	Glyoxal-1,1-dimethyl acetal
		21877-4	7-Methoxy-3,7-dimethyloctanal
÷	30	23254-8	3-Ethoxymethacrolein
		27525-5	2,5-Dimethoxy-3-tetrahydrofurancarboxaldehyde
•		26918-2	2,2-Dimethyl-3-hydroxypropionaldehyde
-		G480-2	DL-Glyceraldehyde
•		G478-0	D-Glyceraldehyde
	35	21665-8	L-Glyceraldehyde

20

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 114 -

	34140-1	3-(Methylthio)propionaldehyde
	30583-9	3-(Dimethylamino)acrolein
	36549-9	3-(Dimethylamino)-2-methyl-2-propenal
	17733-4	Pyrubic aldehyde
5	27706-1	(S) - (-) - 2 - (Methoxymethyl) - 1 -
		pyrrolidinecarboxaldehyde
	29211-7	2-Methoxy-1-pyrrolidinecarboxaldehyde
	29210-9	2-Methoxy-1-piperidinecarboxaldehyde

#### EXAMPLE 123

10 Synthesis of libraries from oligomeric compounds utilizing aryl acid halides. Use of benzoyl chloride Aldrich; 3-methylbenzoyl chloride Aldrich-T3,550-5; 3-methoxybenzoyl chloride, Aldrich-12,965-8; and 3-nitrobenzoyl chloride Aldrich-N1,084-5, as illustrative letters

Preparation of combinatorial libraries as per Example 121 using benzoic acids and benzoic acid derivatives is effected in place of benzyl aldehydes described above using the general procedure of Examples 63 and 65.

Using the above, libraries are prepared from oligomeric compounds that are diveratized with one, two, three, four or more of the following acid halides available from Aldrich Chemical Company, Inc., Milwaukee, WI. The Aldrich catalog number is given in the right hand column and the compound name is given in the left hand column:

25	10663-1	p-Toluoyl chloride
	30253-8	3-Cyanobenzoyl chloride
	13096-6	(+/-)-2-Cloro-2-phenylacetyl chloride
	26366-4	3-(Chloromethyl)benzoyl chloride
	27078-4	4-(Chloromethyl)benzoyl chloride
30	24947-5	4-(Trifluoromethyl)benzoyl chloride
	19394-1	4-Chlorophenoxyacetyl chloride
	24948-3	2-(Trifluoromethyl)benzoyl chloride
	19394-1	4-Chlorophenoxyacetyl chloride

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

		24948-3	2-(Trifluoromethyl)benzoyl chloride
-		10663-1	p-Toluoyl chloride
•		25027-9	3-(Trifluoromethyl)benzoyl chloride
•		S67828-7	2-(2,4,5-Trichlorophenoxy)acetyl chloride
	5	12201-7	o-Toluoyl chloride
•		40248-6	4-(Trifluoromethoxy)benzoyl chloride
		37502-0	3-(Dichloromethyl)benzoyl chloride
		12225-4	m-Toluoyl chloride
		12482-6	4-Cyanobenzoyl chloride
	10	P1675-3	Phenylacetyl chloride
		S88415-4	2-(Phenylthio)propionyl chloride
offengel (1) or Strengths (1) or Market (1) or Market (1) Market (		15862-3	Phenoxyacetyl chloride
Minds		36475-4	trans-4-Nitrocinnamoyl chloride
		28882-9	4-Ethoxybenzoyl chloride
And the first that the first that the first	15	23024-3	m-Anisoyl chloride
		S67595-4	2,3-Dibromo-3-phenylpropionyl chloride
je.		30101-9	Benzyloxyacetyl chloride
		25470-3	o-Anisoyl chloride
		C8110-1	Cinnamoyl chloride
	20	31693-8	3-Methoxyphenylacetyl chloride
		A8847-6	p-Anisoyl chloride
#2		16519-0	Acetylsalicyloyl chloride
		36569-6	4-Methoxyphenylacetyl chloride
		24944-0	Hydrocinnamoyl chloride
	25	26528-4	3,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl chloride
		28350-94	Ethylbenzoyl chloride
		\$40503-5	2-Phenoxypropionyl chloride
		33304-2	2,5-Bis(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl chloride
		S62043-2	p-Tolylacetyl chloride
**	30	16171-3	3,5-Dimethoxybenzoyl chloride
		42339-4	(R)-(-)-A-Methoxy-A-(trifluoromethyl)-
•			phenylacetyl chloride
		26480-6	2,5-Dimethoxyphenylacetyl chloride
<b>4</b> 5		25804-0	3,4-Dimethoxybenzoyl chloride
	35	T6980-9	3,4,5-Trimethoxybenzoyl chloride

- 116 -

		26242-0	2,6-Dimethoxybenzoyl chloride
•		13430-9	trans-2-Phenyl-1-cyclopropanecarbonyl chloride
. ,		S62264-8	5-(Dimethylsulfamoyl)-2-methoxybenzoyl
-			chloride
	5	37383-4	2,4-Dimethoxybenzoyl chloride
-		A1740-4	o-Acetylmandelic chloride
		24945-9	4-Phenyl-1,2,3,4-tetrachloro-1,3-butadiene-1-
			carbonyl cloride
		36848-2	trans-3-(trifluoromethyl)cinnamoyl chloride
	1,0	15712-0	4-tert-butylbenzoyl chloride
		S42860-4	2-Phenylbutyryl chloride
		22203-8	4-Butylbenzoyl chloride
		23747-7	3,4-Dimethoxyphenylacetyl chloride
		22204-6	4-Butoxybenzoyl chloride
	15	S65659-3	2-(4-Chlorobenzoyl)benzoyl chloride
		22214-3	4-Pentylbenzoyl chloride
		C3928-8	2-Chloro-2,2-diphenylacetyl chloride
		S43639-9	4(4-Nitrophenylazo)benzoyl chloride
		33158-9	Diphenylacetyl chloride
	20	S80926-8	4-(Phenylazo)benzoyl chloride
		S61661-3	2-Diphenylacetyl chloride
		16114-4	4-Biphenylcarbonyl chloride
		22209-7	4-Hexylbenzoyl chloride
		22205-4	4-Heptyloxybenzoyl chloride
	25	22211-9	4-Hexyloxybenzoyl chloride
		22206-2	4-Heptyloxybenzoyl chloride

#### EXAMPLE 124

# Loading of solid support, General Procedure

# Method 1: Succinylation and activation of aminodiol monomer

An FMOC protected mono-DMT aminodial monomer (36 mmol) was dissolved in 400 ml  $CH_2Cl_2$ , and triethylamine (45 mmol, 6.25 ml) and succinic anhydride (40 mmol, 4.0 g) added. A catalytic amount of DMAP was added (5 mol %) and the solution

20

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 117 -

stirred at room temperature overnight. TLC showed all the starting material was converted to a more polar spot. To the solution was then added pentafluorophenyl trifluoroacetate (6.9 ml, 40 mmol). The solution was stirred 1 hr, and the polar material was converted to a non-polar spot on TLC. Toluene (150 ml) was added, and the solvents evaporated. The oily residue was loaded on a flash chromatography column, and eluted with ethyl acetate and hexanes to give the product (33 mmol, 93 %).

#### 10 Method 2: Derivatization of TentaGel

TentaGel-NH<sub>2</sub> (50 g, 11 mmol NH<sub>2</sub>) was swelled in 150 ml  $\mathrm{CH_2Cl_2}$ , then washed with 5 % diisopropylethylamine in  $\mathrm{CH_2Cl_2}$ , followed by  $\mathrm{CH_2Cl_2}$ . The resin was sucked dry, and a solution of monomer succinate PFP ester (17 mmol) in 120 ml  $\mathrm{CH_2Cl_2}$  and triethylamine (3.5 ml, 25 mmol) were added. The solution was agitated on a wrist shaker for 6 hours, filtered and rinsed with  $\mathrm{CH_2Cl_2}$ , and a second portion of PFP ester (16 mmol) and triethylamine (3.5 ml) added. The solid support was shaken overnight, filtered and resuspended in 60 ml  $\mathrm{CH_2Cl_2}$ , 60 ml pyridine and 10 ml acetic anhydride added. After 1 hr, the resin was filtered and washed with  $\mathrm{CH_2Cl_2}$ , pyridine/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/Methanol (1:8:1), and diethyl ether. The resin was dried under high vacuum. The loading was determined by DMT cation to be 0.14-0.20 mmol/g.

#### 25 **EXAMPLE 125**

Derivatization of scaffolds on solid support. General procedure for

acylation of scaffold monomers with carboxylic acids.

An aminodiol monomer on a solid support (0.5 g Tentagel, 0.15 mmol/g) is placed in a shaker flask and purged with argon for 15 minutes. The support is pre-swelled in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (60 min.) then washed with DMF(6 ml). The FMOC protecting group,

if present, is removed by addition of piperidine/DMF (10%, 6 mL,  $\sim 80$  eq.), followed by agitation of the reaction mixture for 15 minutes. The support was washed with DMF (6 ml X 5). A solution of a carboxylic acid (0.4 M,  $\sim 5$  eq.) and DIEA (0.8

- M, ~10 eq.) in DMF was added, followed by a solution of activator, BOP or HATU in DMF (0.4 M, 5 eq). The reaction mixture was agitated (30 min.) and then washed with DMF (6 ml X 3) and  $CH_2Cl_2$  (6 ml X 3). Several other activating agents can be used. These include carbodiimides such as
- dicyclohexyl carbodiimide (DCC), diisopropyl carbodiimide (DIC), dimethylaminopropyl ethyl carbodiimide hydrochloride (EDC), EEDQ and IIDQ, carbonyl diimidazole, with or without the addition of additives such as dimethylaminopyridine, N-hydroxybenzotriazole, N-hydroxy-7-azabenzotriazole, and
- others known to those skilled in the art. Other useful coupling agents include substituted uronium salts and phosphonium salts such as HBTU, TBTU, BOP, PyBROP and other analogous reagents, and reagents for producing acyl fluorides, such as cyanuric fluoride. Representative examples
- of each of these reagents can be found in Bodanszky, M. Principles of Peptide Synthesis, 2nd Ed. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1993.

Representative carboxylic acids that can be used to derivatize an amino group of an aminodiol of the invention

25 include:

2-oxovaleric acid
2-oxo-octanoic acid

2-oxo-2-(2-furyl)acetic acid

indole-3-pyruvic acid

30 2-nitrophenylpyruvic acid

2-furylthiopyruvic acid

methacrylic acid

2-methylpropionic acid (isobutyric acid)

cyanoacetic acid

35 methoxyacetic acid

#### - 119 -

- 3-methylthiopropionic acid
- 4-methylpentanoic acid
- 3-trimethylsilylpropionic acid sodium salt
- N-BOC-5-aminovaleric acid]
- 5 3-(N,N-diethylamino)propionic acid hydrochloride monomethyl glutarate
  - 7-oxo-octanoic acid

  - neodecanoic acid
  - 1,2,3-thiadiazole-4-carboxylic acid
- 10 3-amino-1,2,4-triazole-5-carboxylic acid
  - 3-furoic acid
  - 2-furoic acid
  - 4-(S)-butyrolactone-4-carboxylic acid
  - 1-methylpyrrole-2-carboxylic acid
- 15 4-methyl-2-phenyl-1,2,3-triazole-5-carboxylic acid
  - 1-(3'-aminophenyl)-3-carboxy-5-pyrazolone
  - 4-phenyl-5-trifluoromethyl-thiophene-2-carboxylic acid
  - 3-(4-chlorophenylthio)thiophene-4-carboxylic acid
  - 5-(2-pyridylthiomethyl)-2-furancarboxylic acid
- 20 indole-2-carboxylic acid
  - 1-methylindole-2-carboxylic acid
  - 7-benzyloxyindole-2-carboxylic acid
  - 4-oxo-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzo[b]furan-3-carboxylic acid
  - 1-methylindene-2-carboxylic acid
- 25 4-chloro-3-sulfamoylbenzoic acid
  - 2-hydroxybenzoic acid (salicylic acid)
  - a-mercapto-p-toluic acid
  - BOC 4-(aminomethyl)benzoic acid
  - BOC 4-(methylamino)benzoic acid
- 30 N-acetyl-4-aminobenzoic acid
  - 4-isopropoxybenzoic acid
  - 4-(2-[methylsulfonamido]ethoxy) benzoic acid
  - 4-(1H-pyrrol-1-yl)benzoic acid
  - 4-(3-methyl-5-oxo-2-pyrazolin-1-yl)benzoic acid
- 35 4'-(trifluoromethyl)-2-biphenylcarboxylic acid

#### - 120 -

- 2-(4-nitrophenylthio)benzoic acid
- 2-phenoxybenzoic acid
- 2-(4-chlorobenzoyl)benzoic acid
- 2-benzoylbenzoic acid
- 5 a-phenyl-o-toluic acid
  - a-(4-methoxy-1-naphthyl)-o-toluic acid
  - 2-(1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-6-naphthylmethyl)benzoic acid
  - 2-(2-pyridylcarbonyl)benzoic acid
  - 4-(3-fluorobenzamido) benzoic acid
- 10 3'-carboxy-3-methylbenzanilide
  - 2'-methoxyphthalanilic acid
  - 3-benzyloxy-4-methoxybenzoic acid
  - N-(3-methyl-2-pyridyl)phthalamic acid
  - 1-(4-carboxyphenyl)-3-(o-tolyl)urea
- 15 benzotriazole-5-carboxylic acid
  - 5-benzimidazolecarboxylic acid
  - piperonylic acid
  - 2,2,5,7-tetramethylindan-1-one-4-carboxylic acid
  - 2-naphthoic acid
- 20 2-pyrazinecarboxylic acid
  - picolinic acid
  - nicotinic acid
  - isonicotinic acid
  - 6-hydroxynicotinic acid
- 25 tetrahydropyran-4-carboxylic acid
  - N-BOC 4-piperidinecarboxylic acid (isonipecotic acid)
  - 1,3-dimethyl-6-uracilcarboxylic acid
  - 2-pyrrolopyridine-5-carboxylic acid
  - 2-phenoxynicotinic acid
- 30 2-(4-methylphenoxy)pyridine-3-carboxylic acid
  - 2-phenylimidazo(1,2-A)pyridine-6-carboxylic acid
  - 3-isoquinolinecarboxylic acid
  - 4-quinolinecarboxylic acid
  - 4-hydroxy-7-trifluoromethyl-3-quinolinecarboxylic acid
- 35 2-p-tolylcinchoninic acid

- 121 -

nalidixic acid
thiophene-2-acetic acid
5-(1-pyrrolidine)2-tetrazoleacetic acid
N-phthaloylglycine

- 5 indole-3-acetic acid
  cyclopentylacetic acid
  2-indanylacetic acid
  pentafluorophenylacetic acid
  2-(2-fluorophenyl)acetic acid
- 10 (S)-(+)-mandelic acid
  (a,a,a-trifluoro-m-tolyl)acetic acid
  R-(-)-a-methoxyphenylacetic acid
  2-(4-chlorophenyl)-2,2-dimethylacetic acid
  - (R)-(-)-2-phenylbutyric acid
- 15 (3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)acetic acid]
  4-(dimethylamino)phenylacetic acid
  4-biphenylacetic acid
  2-benzyloxyphenylacetic acid
  1-(4-methylphenyl)-1-cyclopropanecarboxylic acid
- 20 benzilic acid
  orotic acid
  4-pyridylacetic acid hydrochloride
  phenylacetic acid
  2-(2-phenyl-1-cyclohexenyl)acetic acid
- 25 trans-3-furanacrylic acid
  2-methyl-4-nitro-1-imidazolepropionic acid
  5-phenyl-2-pyrrolepropionic acid
  2-(4-chlorophenoxy)acetic acid
  phenoxyacetic acid
- N-phenylglycine
  2,5-difluorocinnamic acid
  3-(4-iodophenyl)propionic acid
  N-(2,4-dinitrophenyl)-L-alanine
  3-(3-hydroxyphenyl)propionic acid
- 35 p-toluenesulfonylacetic acid

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

BOC-3-(p-aminophenyl) propionic acid

4-cyanocinnamic acid

4-methoxycinnamic acid

- 2-(p-chlorophenoxy)-2-methylpropionic acid
- 5 p-(p-nitrobenzyloxy)cinnamic acid
  - 2-naphthoxyacetic acid
  - 3,3-diphenylpropionic acid
  - 3,5,6-trichloro-2-pyridoxyacetic acid
  - 4-pyridylthioacetic acid
- 10 5-trifluoromethyl-2-pyridylthioacetic acid
  - 1-piperidinepropionic acid
  - 4-oxo-4-(1-pyrrolidine) butyric acid
  - 3-(4-fluorobenzoyl)propionic acid
  - 3-benzoylpropionic acid
- 15 N-methylhippuric acid
  - 4-oxo-4-(2-trifluoromethylphenyl)butyric acid
  - 3-(4-methoxybenzoyl) propionic acid
  - 3-(4-methylsulfonylbenzoyl)propionic acid
  - 4-(4-acetylphenyl)butyric acid
- 20 4-oxo-4-(2-naphthyl)butyric acid
  - dansyl glycine
  - 3-(4-methoxy-1-naphthoyl)propionic acid
    - (-)-O,O'-dibenzoyl-L-tartaric acid mono(dimethylamide)
  - 1-(3-carboxy-1-oxopropyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline
- 25 1,2-dihydro-2-methyl-1-oxo-3-isoquinolinebutyric acid
  - 2-(2-carboxyethylthio)-3,5,6-trimethyl-1,4-benzoquinone
    - (+)-biotin
  - 4-(2-mercaptobenzothiazolyl)butyric acid
  - Z-styrenesulfonylacetic acid
- 30 4-(p-chlorophenoxy)butyric acid
  - 3-(benzylthio)propionic acid
  - N-(2-pyridyl) succinamic acid
  - Cbz-glycine
  - 2-[(2-phenoxyethyl)thio]acetic acid
- 35 2-(benzenesulfonyl) ethylthioacetic acid

- 123 -

2'-carbamoylglutaranilic acid.

#### EXAMPLE 126

5

10

15

20

25

30

Acylation of scaffold monomers with acyl chlorides, anhydrides, and activated carboxylic acid derivatives.

An aminodiol monomer on a solid support (0.5 g Tentagel, 0.15 mmol/g) was placed in a shaker flask and purged with argon (15 min.). The support was pre-swelled in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (60 min.) then washed with DMF(6 ml). The FMOC protecting group, if present, is removed by addition of piperidine/DMF (10%, 6 mL, ~80 eq.), followed by agitation of the reaction mixture for 15 minutes. The support was washed with DMF (6 ml X 5). A solution of py/DMF (10%, 3 mL, ~50 eq.), acid chloride/DMF (0.12 M, 3 mL, ~5 eq.) was added, and the reaction mixture agitated for 30 minutes. A solution of acid anhydride or other activated derivative in DMF could be used instead of acid chloride. The support was then washed with DMF (6 ml X 3) and  $CH_2Cl_2$  (6 ml X 3). Examples of reagents which can be substituted for acid chlorides are: acid anhydrides and mixed anhydrides, imidazolides, or active esters such as N-hydroxy succinimide esters and other O-acyl hydroxylamine derivatives, acyl azides, 4-nitrophenol esters, pentachlorophenyl or pentafluorophenyl esters and other active aryl and vinyl esters. Representative examples of each of these reagents can be found in Bodanszky, M. Principles of Peptide Synthesis, 2nd Ed. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1993.

#### EXAMPLE 127

# Sulfonylation of scaffold monomers:

An aminodiol monomer on a solid support (0.5 g Tentagel, 0.15 mmol/g) was placed in a shaker flask and purged with argon (15 min.). The support was pre-swelled in  $CH_2Cl_2$  (60 min.) then washed with DMF(6 ml). The FMOC protecting group,

if present, is removed by addition of piperidine/DMF (10%, 6 mL,  $\sim 80$  eq.), followed by agitation of the reaction mixture for 15 minutes. The support was washed with DMF (6 ml X 5). A solution of TEA/CH<sub>3</sub>CN (10%, 3 mL,  $\sim 30$  eq.) was added followed by the sulfonyl chloride in CH3CN/Pyridine (0.12 M, 3 mL,  $\sim 5$  eq.), and the reaction mixture agitated for 30 minutes. The support was washed with pyridine (6 ml X 3), DMF (6 ml X 3) and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (6 ml X 3).

Representative sulfonyl chlorides suitable for use in
the invention include:
methanesulfonyl chloride
dimethylsulfamoyl chloride
1--butanesulfonyl chloride
3,5-dimethylisoxazole-4-sulfonyl chloride
5-(4-chlorobenzamidomethyl) thiophene-2-sulfonyl chloride

5-(4-chlorobenzamidomethyl) thiophene-2-sulfonyl chloride benzenesulfonyl chloride o-carbomethoxybenzenesulfonyl chloride N-acetylsulfanilyl chloride 2,5-dimethoxybenzenesulfonyl chloride

20 3-(chlorosulfonyl)benzoic acid
2-dibenzofuransulfonyl chloride
2-naphthalenesulfonyl chloride
8-quinolinesulfonyl chloride
phenylmethanesulfonyl chloride

25 (+/-)-10-camphorsulfonyl chloride
N-acetylsulfanilyl chloride
3,5-dichlorobenzene sulfonyl chloride
dansyl chloride.

#### EXAMPLE 128

# 30 Alkylation of scaffold monomers

An aminodiol monomer on a solid support (0.5 g Tentagel, 0.15 mmol/g) was placed in a shaker flask and purged with argon (15 min.). The support was pre-swelled in  $CH_2Cl_2$  (60 min.) then washed with DMF (6 ml). The FMOC protecting group,

20

- 125 -

if present, is removed by addition of piperidine/DMF (10%, 6 mL, ~80 eq.), followed by agitation of the reaction mixture for 15 minutes. The support was washed with DMF (6 ml X 5). A solution of DIEA in DMF (10%, 3 mL, ~50 eq.), alkylating reagent (Alkyl halide, mesylate, tosylate or triflate) in DMF (0.2 M, 3 mL, ~5 eq.) is added, and the reaction mixture is agitated for 120 min. The support is then washed with DMF (6 ml X 3) and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (6 ml X 3).

#### EXAMPLE 129

# 10 Synthesis of Ureas on Solid Support

An aminodiol monomer on a solid support (0.5 g Tentagel, 0.15 mmol/g) was placed in a shaker flask and purged with argon (15 min.). The support was pre-swelled in  $CH_2Cl_2$  (60 min.) then washed with DMF(6 ml). The FMOC protecting group, if present, is removed by addition of piperidine/DMF (10%, 6 mL, ~80 eq.), followed by agitation of the reaction mixture for 15 minutes. The support was washed with DMF (6 ml X 5). A solution of isocyanate in DMF (2.0 ml, 0.2M) is added, followed by DMAP in DMF (2.0 ml, 0.02M) and the resulting mixture agitated (120 min.). The support is then washed with DMF (6 ml X 3) and  $CH_2Cl_2$  (6 ml X 3).

Representative isocyanates suitable for use in the invention include:

benzoyl isocyanate

- 25 4-chlorobenzenesulfonyl isocyanate benzenesulfonyl isocyanate 3-nitrophenyl isocyanate 4-acetylphenyl isocyanate 2,5-dimethylphenyl isocyanate
- 2-phenylphenyl isocyanate
  4-phenoxyphenyl isocyanate
  1-naphthyl isocyanate
  R-(+)-a-methylbenzyl isocyanate

PCT/US96/09604

from parties of the state of th

15

20

25

30

Methyl Isocyanate
Isopropyl Isocyanate
Cyclohexyl isocyanate
Allyl Isocyanate
5 Chloromethyl Isocyanate
Chloropropyl Isocyanate
Ethyl Isocyanatoacetate
4-(Chloromethyl) phenyl isocyanate
3-Chlorophenyl Isocyanate
thyl 4-Fluorophenyl Isocyanate
Ethyl 4-Isocyanatobenzoate
3,5-Dichlorophenyl Isocyanate

#### EXAMPLE 130

#### Quality Control:

An aliquot (5 mg) of a scaffold attached to a solid support that has been derivatized is placed in a 1 mL disposable syringe fitted with glass wool plug. TCA/CH2Cl2 (3%, 0.4 ml X 5) is drawn in, and the reaction mixture is agitated manually to remove the DMT. The support is washed with  $CH_2Cl_2$  (6 ml X 3) and pyridine- $CH_3CN$  (6 ml X 3). DMTdeoxythymidine H-phosphonate in pyridine-CH3CN (0.1 M, 0.4 mL, ~50 eq.) is added, followed by a solution of adamantoyl chloride in pyridine-CH<sub>3</sub>CN, and the reaction mixture is agitated manually for 3 minutes. The support is washed with pyridine-CH<sub>2</sub>CN (1 ml X 3) and THF (1 ml X 3). Oxidation of the H-phosphonate diester is achieved by adding a solution of  $I_c$  in THF (0.2 M, 0.4 mL, ~100 eq.) and  $H_cO/TEA/THF$  (1:1:8, 0.4 mL), and agitating periodically. The support is washed with THF (1 mL X 3), pyridine-CH3CN (1 mL X 5), DMF (1 mL X 3),  $CH_2Cl_2$  (1 mL X 3), and MeOH (1 mL X 3).  $NH_4OH$  (28-30%, 0.5 mL) is added to cleave the product from the support. After 1-2 hours, the ammonia solution is collected in vials and subjected to HPLC and mass spectrometric analyses.

10

15

25

30

- 127 -

#### EXAMPLE 131

(S) -2-t-Butoxycarbonyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-7-hydroxyisoquinoline-3-carboxylic Acid.

The title compound was made by the method of Verschueren, K., Thoth, G., Tourwé, D., Lebl, M., Van Binst, G., Hruby, V. Synthesis, 1992, 5, 458-4602.

#### EXAMPLE 132

(S) -2-t-Butoxycarbonyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-3-hydroxymethyl-7-hydroxyisoquinoline.

(S)-2-t-Butoxycarbonyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-7-hydroxyisoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (100 mmol) is dissolved in THF (1 L). Borane methyl sulfide complex (200 mmol) is added carefully, and the solution heated at reflux for 1 hour. The solution is cooled, quenched with MeOH, and 1 N HCl to pH 2. The solution is neutralized to pH 7-8 with NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and the solvent evaporated. The oily residue is diluted with water, extracted with EtOAC, washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and brine, then dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated to give the title compound.

#### 20 **EXAMPLE 133**

(S) -2-t-Butoxycarbonyl-3-hydroxymethyl-7-hydroxyoctahydroisoquinoline

To a solution of t-butyl alcohol (9.1 g, 123 mmol), 50 ml ether, and ammonia (150 mL) is added (S)-2-t-butoxycarbonyl-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-3-hydroxymethyl-7-hydroxyisoquinoline (5 mmol). The solution is brought to reflux, and lithium shot (0.51 g, 82 mmol) is added over 30 minutes. The solution is allowed to reflux for 3 hours, and solid NH<sub>4</sub>Cl added until the color disappears. The ammonia is allowed to evaporate overnight, ice-water is added, and the organic layer separated. The aqueous layer is extracted with chloroform and the combined organic phases are washed with

- 128 -

brine, dried and evaporated. The crude product is redissolved in methanol, 5 % Pt/C added and the solution shaken under 3 atm  $H_2$  for 6 hours to complete the reduction. The catalyst is filtered and the solvent evaporated. The resulting residue is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography to give the title compound.

#### EXAMPLE 134

5

10

25

30

# (S) -2-FMOC-3-hydroxymethyl-7-hydroxyoctahydroisoquinoline

The Boc protected material from the previous example is dissolved in ethyl acetate and 1 N HCl in ethyl acetate is added. The solution is stirred until all the starting material is consumed. The solvent is evaporated and the residue redissolved in 2M NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (25 ml) and dioxane (25 ml). FMOC-Cl is added and the solution stirred for 6 hours. The solvent is evaporated, and the product is extracted with ethyl acetate, washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, and then brine, dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and evaporated. The resulting residue is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography to give the title compound.

#### 20 **EXAMPLE 135**

# (S)-2-FMOC-3-dimethoxytrityloxymethyl-7-

#### hydroxyoctahydroisoquinoline

The product from the previous example is dissolved in pyridine, cooled to 0 °C and 1.2 eq DMT-Cl added. The solution is stirred overnight at 0 °C, quenched with methanol, and the solvent evaporated. The residue is redissolved in EtOAc, washed with 5 % citric acid, NaHCO3, and brine, and evaporated. The resulting residue is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography to give the title compound.

#### EXAMPLE 136

20

25

- 129 -

# 1-BOC-3-hydroxymethylpyrrole

The title compound is prepared according to the method of Davies, H. M. L., Matasi, J. J., Ahmed, G. J. Org. Chem. 1996, 61, 2305.

#### 5 **EXAMPLE 137**

# 1-BOC-3-O-TBDMS-hydroxymethylpyrrole

1-BOC-3-hydroxymethylpyrrole (2.5 eq) and imidazole (2.5 eq) are dissolved in DMF and TBDMS-Cl (1.2 eq) is added. The solution is stirred overnight, quenched with water, and extracted with EtOAc. The extracts are washed with water, NaHCO $_3$ , and brine, and dried with MgSO $_4$ . The resulting residue is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography to give the title compound.

#### EXAMPLE 138

# Methyl-3-O-TBDMS-6-(O-TBDMS)-oxymethyl-8-BOC-8-azabicyclo[3.2.1.]octa-2,6-diene-2-carboxylate

A solution of methyl 2-diazoacetoacetate (25 mmol) and triethylamine (30 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> is cooled to 0 °C, and TBDMS-triflate (27 mmol) is added. The solution is stirred at 0 °C for 30 minutes, diluted with hexane, and washed with 5% NaHCO<sub>3</sub>. The extracts are dried and evaporated, and the crude enol silyl ether is used directly. The enol ether is dissolved in hexane (50 mL), and added slowly to a solution of 1-BOC-3-O-TBDMS-hydroxymethylpyrrole (20 mmol) and rhodium (II) hexanoate in refluxing hexane (50 mL) under an atmosphere of argon. The solution is heated a further 12 hours and evaporated. The product is purified by flash cromatography. The resulting residue is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography to give the title compound.

#### 30 **EXAMPLE 139**

Methyl-3-O-TBDMS-6-(O-TBDMS)-oxymethyl-8-BOC-8-

15

25

- 130 -

# azabicyclo[3.2.1.]octa-2-ene-2-carboxylate

The diene product of the previous example and tris(triphenylphosphine) rhodium chloride (5 mol $^{9}$ ) are dissolved in ethanol, and shaken under 45 psi H $_{2}$  for 12 hours. The solvent is evaporated and the resulting residue is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography to give the title compound.

#### EXAMPLE 140

Methyl-3-oxo-6-hydroxymethyl-8-BOC-8-

10 azabicyclo[3.2.1.]octane-2-carboxylate

The bis silyl ether of the previous example is dissolved in THF, and a solution of tetrabutylammonium fluoride in THF is added (3 eq). The solution is stirred at room temperature until the starting material is consumed. The solvent is evaporated, the residue redissolved in ether and washed with dilute NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine, and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The crude material is filtered through silica gel to give the title compound.

# EXAMPLE 141

20 3-0xo-6-hydroxymethyl-8-BOC-8-azabicyclo[3.2.1.]octane

The keto ester of the previous example is dissolved in DMSO, and 1 eq NaCl and 1 eq H<sub>2</sub>O added. The solution is heated to 160 °C for 1 hour in an open vessel, cooled to room temperature and diluted with water. The suspension is extracted with EtOAc, washed with 5 % NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and evaporated. The resulting residue is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography to give the title compound.

# EXAMPLE 142

30 3-Oxo-6-O-DMT-oxymethyl-8-FMOC-8-azabicyclo[3.2.1.]octane 3-Oxo-6-hydroxymethyl-8-BOC-8-azabicyclo[3.2.1.]octane

20

- 131 -

is dissolved in ethyl acetate and 1 N HCl in ethyl acetate is added. The solution is stirred until all the starting material is consumed. The solvent is evaporated and the residue redissolved in 2M NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (25mL) and dioxane (25 mL). FMOC-Cl is added and the solution stirred for 6 hours. The solvent is evaporated, and the product extracted with ethyl acetate, washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and evaporated. The crude material is dissolved in pyridine, cooled to 0 °C and 1.2 eq DMT-Cl added. The solution is stirred overnight at 0 °C, quenched with methanol, and the solvent evaporated. The residue is redissolved in EtOAc, washed with 5 % citric acid, NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and evaporated. The resulting residue is purified by silica gel flash column chromatography to give the title compound.

# 15 **EXAMPLE 143**

# 3-Hydroxy-6-O-DMT-oxymethyl-8-FMOC-8-azabicyclo[3.2.1.]octane

The product from the previous example is dissolved in THF and 1 eq of a solution of LiBH<sub>4</sub> is added. The solution is stirred until the starting material was consumed. The reaction is carefully quenched to pH 4 (wet litmus), and neutralized with NaHCO<sub>3</sub>. The solvent is evaporated, the residue extracted with ethyl acetate, washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine, dried and evaporated. The product is purified by flash chromatography.

#### 25 **EXAMPLE 144**

# N-Methyl-2,6-diacetoxy-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane

The title compound is made by the method of Clousdale, I. S., Kluge, A. F., McClure, N. L. J. Org. Chem. 1982, 47, 919.

#### 30 **EXAMPLE 145**

2,6-Diacetoxy-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane

5 u r a a g

O)

20

25

30

The material from the previous example (10 mmol) is dissolved in 100 ml 1,2-dichloroethane, cooled to 0 °C and 1-chloroethyl chloroformate (11 mmol) is added. The solution is warmed to reflux temperature after 15 minutes, and heated until the starting material is consumed. The solvent is then removed, and the residue redissolved in anhydrous methanol, and warmed to 50 °C for 1 hour. The solvent is removed to give the title compound as the HCl salt.

#### EXAMPLE 146

#### 2,6-Dihydroxy-9-FMOC-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane

The material from the previous example (10 mmol) is dissolved in 50 ml 1:1 aqueous THF, and 50 mmol LiOH added. The biphasic solution is stirred at room temperature for 6 hours. A solution of FMOC-Cl (11 mmol) in THF is then added dropwise at room temperature over 15 minutes. After 1 hour the solution is acidified with 10% HCl to pH 2, and extracted with EtOAc, washed with water, brine and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The product is purified by flash chromatography.

#### EXAMPLE 147

# 2-O-DMT-6-hydroxy-9-FMOC-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane

The diol from the previous example (10 mmol) is dissolved in  $CH_2Cl_2$  and pyridine (9:1), cooled to 0 °C and DMT-Cl (10 mmol) is added in portions (1.0 eq). The solution is stirred overnight at 0 °C. The reaction is quenched with MeOH, evaporated, and excess solvent is removed by azeotropic distillation with toluene. The residue is redissolved in EtOAc, washed with 5% citric acid, NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The product is purified by flash chromatography using a gradient of MeOH in  $CH_2Cl_2$ . The product is obtained in 50% yield, along with 25% ditritylated material which is conserved and recycled, and 25% unreacted starting material.

15

20

25

30

#### EXAMPLE 148

# Dimethyl 3-0-TBDMS-glutarate

Dimethyl 3-hydroxyglutarate (34 mmol) and imidazole (85 mmol) are dissolved in 150 ml DMF, and TBDMS-Cl added (40 mmol). The solution is stirred overnight, quenched with water (400 ml), extracted with EtOAc, washed with NaHCO $_3$ , brine and dried with MgSO $_4$  to give the title compound.

#### EXAMPLE 149

#### 3-O-TBDMS-1,5-pentanediol

The material from the previous example in dissolved in dry THF and 35 ml of 2M LiBH<sub>4</sub> in THF added. The solution is heated to reflux for 1.5 hrs, cooled to room temperature and quenched carefully with 10% HCl to pH 2, neutralized with NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and evaporated. The residue is extracted with EtOAc, washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub> to give the title compound.

# EXAMPLE 150

# N-Methyl-3-O-TBDMS-7-keto-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane

To a stirred solution of oxalyl chloride (10 mmol) in 20 ml THF at -78 °C is added 11 mmol dimethylsulfoxide. The solution is warmed to -35 °C for 5 minutes and recooled to -78 °C. A solution of 3-O-TBDMS-1,5-pentanediol (5 mmol) in 10 ml THF is added, and the solution warmed to 0 °C. After 15 minutes, triethylamine (40 mmol) is added and the solution stirred at room temperature to effect complete conversion to the dialdehyde. The solvent is evaporated under reduced pressure, and the crude dialdehyde is redissolved in 40 ml citrate/phosphate buffer (pH 5.5) to which is added 15 mmol methylamine hydrochloride in 50 ml water, followed by the dropwise addition of 12 mmol acetone dicarboxylate in 80 ml water. The solution is stirred 24 hrs, 5 ml concentrated HCl added, and the solution heated to 90 °C for 1 hr to complete

25

30

the decarboxylation. Sodium hydroxide is added to pH 12, and the solution extracted with  $\mathrm{CH_2Cl_2}$ , dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and purified by chromatography on alumina to yield the product.

#### EXAMPLE 151

# N-FMOC-3-O-TBDMS-7-keto-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane

The material from the previous example (10 mmol) is dissolved in 100 ml 1,2-dichloroethane, cooled to 0 °C and 1-chloroethyl chloroformate (22 mmol) is added. The solution is warmed to reflux temperature after 15 minutes, and heated until the starting material is consumed. The solvent is then removed, and the residue redissolved in anhydrous methanol, and warmed to 50 °C for 1 hour. The solvent is removed and the residue redissolved in 25 ml THF and 25 ml saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub>. A solution of FMOC-Cl (11 mmol) in THF is then added dropwise at room temperature over 15 minutes. After 1 hr the solution is acidified with 10% HCl to pH 2, and extracted with EtOAc, washed with water, brine and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The product is purified by flash chromatography.

# EXAMPLE 152

# 20 N-FMOC-3-O-TBDMS-7-hydroxy-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane

The material from the previous example (10 mmol) in dissolved in dry THF and 6 ml of 2 M LiBH<sub>4</sub> in THF added. The solution is stirred at room temperature and quenched carefully with 10% HCl to pH 2, neutralized with NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and evaporated. The residue is extracted with EtOAc, washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>.

#### EXAMPLE 153

# N-FMOC-3-O-TBDMS-7-O-DMT-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane

The alcohol from the previous example (10 mmol) is dissolved in  $CH_2Cl_2$  and pyridine (9:1), cooled to 0 °C and DMT-Cl (11 mmol) added in portions (1.0 eq). The solution is

ij.

10

15

20

25

30

1

- 135 -

stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction is quenched with MeOH, evaporated, and excess solvent removed by azeotropic distillation with toluene,. The residue is redissolved in EtOAc, washed with 5% citric acid, NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The product is purified by silica gel flash chromatography with a gradient of MeOH in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>.

#### EXAMPLE 154

# N-FMOC-3-hydroxy-7-O-DMT-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane

The product of the previous example is added to a solution of triethylamine trihydrofluoride (100 mmol) and triethylamine (50 mmol) in 50 ml of THF. The solution is stirred until the starting material is completely consumed. The reaction is stopped by the addition of saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> followed by evaporation of the solvent. The residue is extracted with EtOAc, washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The product is purified by flash chromatography.

#### EXAMPLE 155

# N-Methyl-2,6-diacetoxy-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane

The title compound is made by the method of Clousdale, I. S., Kluge, A. F., McClure, N. L. J. Org. Chem. 1982, 47, 919.

#### EXAMPLE 156

# 2,6-Diacetoxy-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane

The material from the previous example (10 mmol) is dissolved in 100 ml 1,2-dichloroethane, cooled to 0 °C and 1-chloroethyl chloroformate (11 mmol) is added. The solution is warmed to reflux temperature after 15 minutes, and heated until the starting material is consumed. The solvent is then removed, and the residue redissolved in anhydrous methanol, and warmed to 50 °C for 1 hour. The solvent is removed to give the title compound as the HCl salt.

15

20

30

#### EXAMPLE 157

# 2,6-Dihydroxy-9-FMOC-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane

The material from the previous example (10 mmol) is dissolved in 50 ml 1:1 aqueous THF, and 50 mmol LiOH added. The biphasic solution is stirred at room temperature for 6 hours. A solution of FMOC-Cl (11 mmol) in THF is then added dropwise at room temperature over 15 minutes. After 1 hr the solution is acidified with 10% HCl to pH 2, and extracted with EtOAc, washed with water, brine and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The product is purified by flash chromatography.

- 136 -

#### EXAMPLE 158

# 2-O-DMT-6-hydroxy-9-FMOC-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane

The diol from the previous example (10 mmol) is dissolved in  $\mathrm{CH_2Cl_2}$  and pyridine (9:1), cooled to 0 °C and DMT-Cl (10 mmol) is added in portions (1.0 eq). The solution is stirred overnight at 0 °C. The reaction is quenched with MeOH, evaporated, excess solvent removed by azeotropic distillation with toluene. The residue is redissolved in EtOAc, washed with 5% citric acid, NaHCO3, brine and dried with MgSO4. The product is purified by flash chromatography on a gradient of MeOH in  $\mathrm{CH_2Cl_2}$ . The product is obtained in 50% yield, along with 25% ditritylated material which is conserved and recycled, and 25% unreacted starting material.

# EXAMPLE 159

#### 25 Dimethyl 3-O-TBDMS-glutarate

Dimethyl 3-hydroxyglutarate (34 mmol) and imidazole (85 mmol) are dissolved in 150 ml DMF, and TBDMS-Cl added (40 mmol). The solution is stirred overnight, quenched with water (400 ml), extracted with EtOAc, washed with NaHCO<sub>2</sub>, brine and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>.

# EXAMPLE 160

25

30

10

# 3-O-TBDMS-1,5-pentanediol

The material from the previous example in dissolved in dry THF and 35 ml 2 M LiBH, in THF added. The solution is heated at reflux for 1.5 hrs, cooled to room temperature and quenched carefully with 10% HCl to pH 2, neutralized with  ${\tt NaHCO_3}$  and evaporated. The residue is extracted with EtOAc, washed with NaHCO3, brine and dried with MgSO4.

- 137 -

#### EXAMPLE 161

# N-Methyl-3-O-TBDMS-7-keto-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane

To a stirred solution of oxalyl chloride (10 mmol) in 20 ml THF at -78 °C is added 11 mmol dimethylsulfoxide. The solution is warmed to -35 °C for 5 minutes and recooled to -78°C. A solution of 3-O-TBDMS-1,5-pentanediol (5 mmol) in 10 ml THF is added, and the solution warmed to 0 °C. After 15 minutes, triethylamine (40 mmol) is added and the solution stirred at room temperature to effect complete conversion to the dialdehyde. The solvent is evaporated under reduced pressure, and the crude dialdehyde is redissolved in 40 ml citrate/phosphate buffer (pH 5.5) to which is added 15 mmol methylamine hydrochloride in 50 ml water, followed by the dropwise addition of 12 mmol acetone dicarboxylate in 80 ml water. The solution is stirred 24 hrs, 5 ml of concentrated Hcl is added, and the solution is heated to 90 °C for 1 hr to complete the decarboxylation. Sodium hydroxide is added to pH 12, and the solution extracted with  $CH_2Cl_2$ , dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and purified by chromatography on alumina.

#### EXAMPLE 162

# N-FMOC-3-O-TBDMS-7-keto-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane

The material from the previous example (10 mmol) is dissolved in 100 ml 1,2-dichloroethane, cooled to 0  $^{\circ}\text{C}$  and 1chloroethyl chloroformate (22 mmol) is added. The solution is warmed to reflux temperature after 15 minutes, and heated until the starting material is consumed. The solvent is then

- 138 -

removed, and the residue redissolved in anhydrous methanol, and warmed to 50 °C for 1 hour. The solvent is removed and the residue redissolved in 25 ml THF and 25 ml saturated NaHCO<sub>2</sub>. A solution of FMOC-Cl (11 mmol) in THF is then added dropwise at room temperature over 15 minutes. After 1 hr the solution is acidified with 10% HCl to pH 2, and extracted with EtOAc, washed with water, brine and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The product is purified by flash chromatography.

PCT/US96/09604

#### EXAMPLE 163

# 10 N-FMOC-3-O-TBDMS-7-hydroxy-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane

The material from the previous example (10 mmol) is dissolved in dry THF and 6 ml 2 M LiBH<sub>4</sub> in THF is added. The solution is stirred at room temperature and quenched carefully with 10% HCl to pH 2, neutralized with NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and evaporated. The residue is extracted with EtOAc, washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>.

# EXAMPLE 164

# N-FMOC-3-O-TBDMS-7-O-DMT-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane

The alcohol from the previous example (10 mmol) is dissolved in  $\mathrm{CH_2Cl_2}$  and pyridine (9:1), cooled to 0 °C and DMT-Cl (11 mmol) added in portions (1.0 eq). The solution is stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction is quenched with MeOH, evaporated, and excess solvent removed by azeotropic distillation with toluene. The residue is redissolved in EtOAc, washed with 5% citric acid, NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The product is purified by silica gael flash chromatography with a gradient of MeOH in  $\mathrm{CH_2Cl_2}$ .

#### EXAMPLE 165

# N-FMOC-3-hydroxy-7-0-DMT-9-azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane

The product of the previous example is added to a solution of triethylamine trihydrofluoride (100 mmol) and triethylamine (50 mmol) in 50 ml THF. The solution is stirred

25

30

- 139 -

until the starting material is completely consumed. The reaction is stopped by the addition of saturated NaHCO<sub>2</sub> followed by evaporation of the solvent. The residue is extracted with EtOAc, washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The product is purified by flash chromatography.

PCT/US96/09604

#### EXAMPLE 166

Synthesis of a trimer containing different aminodiol backbone units

A shaker flask is charged with 10 umol (ca. 67 mg) of N-FMOC-2-O-DMT-diethylamino-2'-O-succinylamino TentaGel (abbreviated DMT-FMOC-dea-TG), prepared by succinylation of N-FMOC-2'-hydroxyethyl-2-O-DMT-ethylamine of Example 98, followed by coupling to amino Tentagel using using the General Procedure of Example 124. The DMT-FMOC-diethanolamine-TG is treated with 10% piperidine in DMF to remove the FMOC group, washed with DMF, and then with CH2Cl2. The free amine is acylated with cyclohexane carboxylic acid using HATU as the coupling agent following General Procedure of Example 125 and Example 126 to give DMT-de(CH)-TG. The resin is washed with DMF and  $CH_2Cl_2$ , the trityl group removed with 3% TCA in  $CH_2Cl_2$ , and the resin washed with  $CH_2Cl_2$  and pyridine/ $CH_3CN$  (1:1). resin is then treated with the second scaffold H-phosphonate of Example 81 (abbr. DMT-FMOC-pd-Hphos) and adamantoyl chloride in pyridine/CH3CN using the method of the General Procedures of Example 69 and Example 73. After washing with pyridine/CH3CN, the resin is treated with a 10% solution of isopropoxyethylamine in carbon tetrachloride/pyridine (1:1) for 20 minutes. The amine solution is removed and the resin washed with DMF, followed by 10% piperidine in DMF to remove the second FMOC group. After washing the resin with DMF, the dimer is acylated with Thiophene carboxylic acid and HATU using the General Procedure. After the acylation is complete, the resin is again washed with DMF,  $CH_2Cl_2$  and detritylated

25

30

10

- 140 -

PCT/US96/09604

with 3% TCA in CH2Cl2, and then washed with pyridine/CH3CN (1:1). The resin is then treated with the third scaffold Hphosphonate of Example 59 (abbr. DMT-FMOC-hp-Hphos) and adamantoyl chloride in pyridine/CH3CN using the method of the General Procedures of Example 69 and Example 73. After washing with pyridine/CH3CN, the resin is treated with a 10%solution of 3-aminomethylpyridine in carbon tetrachloride/pyridine (1:1) for 20 minutes. The amine solution is removed and the resin washed with DMF, followed by 10% piperidine in DMF to remove the third FMOC group. After washing the resin with DMF, the trimer is acylated with 4nitrobenzoic acid and HATU using the General Procedure. The resin is washed with DMF,  $CH_2Cl_2$ , and detritylated with 3% TCA in  $CH_2Cl_2$ . The resin is washed with  $CH_2Cl_2$  to remove traces of acid, and the solid support treated with NH4OH to cleave the product from the solid support. The ammonia solution is removed in vacuo to give the final compound composed of three different scaffolds (1: diethanolamine, 2: piperidinediol and 3: hydroxyprolinol) acylated with three different carboxylic acids (1: cyclohexane carboxylic acid, 2: thiophene carboxylic acid, and 3: 4-nitrobenzoic acid) and linked with two different substituted phosphoramidates (1-2: isopropoxyethylamine, and 2-3: 3-aminomethylpyridine).

#### **EVALUATION**

### 25 PROCEDURE 1

10

ű.

30

#### Antimicrobial Assay

#### Staphylococcus aureus

Staphylococcus aureus is known to cause localized skin infections as a result of poor hygiene, minor trauma, psoriasis or eczema. It also causes respiratory infections, pneumonia, toxic shock syndrome and septicemia. It is a common cause of acute food poisoning. It exhibits rapid emergence of drug resistance to penicillin, cephalosporin, vancomycin and nafcillin.

In this assay, the strain S. aureus ATCC 25923 (American Type Culture Collection) is used in the bioassay. To initiate the exponential phase of bacterial growth prior to the assay, a sample of bacteria grown overnight at 37 °C in typtocase soy broth (BBL) is used to reinoculate sample wells of 96-well microtiter plates. The assays are carried out in the 96-well microtiter plates in 150  $\mu$ L volume with approximately 1 x 10 $^6$  cells per well.

Bacteria in typtocase soy broth (75  $\mu$ L) is added to the compound mixtures of the invention in solution in 75  $\mu$  water in the individual well of the microtiter plate. Final concentrations of the compound mixtures are 25  $\mu$ M, 10  $\mu$ M and 1 $\mu$ M. Each concentration of the compound mixtures is assayed in triplicate. The plates are incubated at 37 °C and growth monitored over a 24 hour period by measuring the optical density at 595 nm using a BioRad model 3550 UV microplate reader. The percentage of growth relative to a well containing no compound is determined. Ampicillin and tetracycline antibiotic positive controls are concurrently tested in each screening assay.

#### PROCEDURE 2

10

15

20

25

30

T.

# Antimicrobial Mechanistic Assay Bacterial DNA Gyrase

DNA gyrase is a bacterial enzyme which can introduce negative supercoils into DNA utilizing the free energy derived from ATP hydrolysis. This activity is critical during DNA replication and is a well characterized target for antibiotic inhibition of bacterial growth. In this assay, libraries of compounds of the invention are screened for inhibition of DNA gyrase. The assay measures the supercoiling of a relaxed plasmid by DNA gyrase as an electrophoretic shift on an agarose gel. Initially all library pools are screened for inhibitory activity at 30 µM

and then a dose response analysis is effected with active subsets. Novobiocin, an antibiotic that binds to the ß subunit of DNA gyrase is used as a positive control in the assay. The sensitivity of the DNA gyrase assay was determined by titrating the concentration of the know DNA gyrase inhibitor, Novobiocin, in the supercoiling assay. The  $IC_{50}$  was determined to be 8 nM, sufficient to identify the activity of a single active species of comparable activity in a library having 30  $\mu$ M concentration.

### 10 PROCEDURE 3

Marie Court Court Court

15

20

25

30

# Use of a combinatorial library for identifying of metal chelators and imaging agents

This procedure is used to identify specific compounds of the invention contained in libraries of compounds which each contain a ring which contains an ultraviolet chromophore. The diversity groups attached to the compound bridge are selected from metal binders, coordinating groups such as amine, hydroxyl and carbonyl groups, and other groups having lone pairs of electrons, such that the oligomeric compounds of the invention can form coordination complexes with heavy metals and imaging agents. The procedure is used to identify oligomeric compounds of the invention for chelating and removing heavy metals from industrial broths, waste stream eluents, heavy metal poisoning of farm animals and other sources of contaminating heavy metals, and for use in identifying imaging agent carriers, such as carriers for technetium 99.

An aliquot of a test solution having the desired ion or imaging agent at a known concentration is added to an aliquot of standard solution of the pool of compounds of the invention being assayed. The UV spectrum of this aliquot is measured and is compared to the UV spectrum of a further aliquot of the same solution lacking the test ion or imaging

agent. A shift in the extinction coefficient is indicative of binding of the metal ion or imaging ion to a compound in the library pool being assayed.

#### PROCEDURE 4

10

15

20

25

thing the state and the state of

Li Li

# Assay of combinatorial library for PLA, inhibitors

A preferred target for assay of combinatorially generated pools of compounds is the phospholipase A: family. Phospholipases  $A_2$  (PLA<sub>2</sub>) are a family of enzymes that hydrolyze the sn-2 ester linkage of membrane phospholipids resulting in release of a free fatty acid and a lysophospholipid (Dennis, E.A., The Enzymes, Vol. 16, pp. 307-353, Boyer, P. D., ed., Academic Press, New York, 1983). Elevated levels of type II PLA2 are correlated with a number of human inflammatory diseases. The PLA2-catalyzed reaction is the rate-limiting step in the release of a number of proinflammatory mediators. Arachidonic acid, a fatty acid commonly linked at the sn-2 position, serves as a precursor to leukotrienes, prostaglandins, lipoxins and thromboxanes. The lysophospholipid can be a precursor to plateletactivating factor. PLA2 is regulated by pro-inflammatory cytokines and, thus, occupies a central position in the inflammatory cascade (Dennis, ibid.; Glaser et al., TiPs Reviews 1992, 14, 92; and Pruzanski et al., Inflammation 1992, 16, 451). All mammalian tissues evaluated thus far have exhibited PLA2 activity. At least three different types of PLA; are found in humans: pancreatic (type I), synovial fluid (type II) and cytosolic. Studies suggest that additional isoenzymes exist. Type I and type II, the secreted forms of PLA2, share strong similarity with phospholipases isolated from the venom of snakes. The PLA: enzymes are important for normal functions including digestion, cellular membrane remodeling and repair, and in mediation of the inflammatory response. Both cytosolic and

15

20

25

30

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 144 -

type II enzymes are of interest as therapeutic targets. Increased levels of the type II PLA<sub>2</sub> are correlated with a variety of inflammatory disorders including rheumatoid arthritis, osteoarthritis, inflammatory bowel disease and septic shock, suggesting that inhibitors of this enzyme would have therapeutic utility. Additional support for a role of PLA<sub>2</sub> in promoting the pathophysiology observed in certain chronic inflammatory disorders was the observation that injection of type II PLA<sub>2</sub> into the footpad of rats (Vishwanath et al., Inflammation 1988, 12, 549) or into the articular space of rabbits (Bomalaski et al., J. Immunol. 1991, 146, 3904) produced an inflammatory response. When the protein was denatured before injection, no inflammatory response was produced.

The type II PLA2 enzyme from synovial fluid is a relatively small molecule (about 14 kD) and can be distinguished from type I enzymes (e.g. pancreatic) by the sequence and pattern of its disulfide bonds. Both types of enzymes require calcium for activity. The crystal structures of secreted PLA2 enzymes from venom and pancreatic PLA2, with and without inhibitors, have been reported (Scott et al., Science 1990, 250, 1541). Recently, the crystal structure of PLA from human synovial fluid has been determined (Wery et al., Nature 1991, 352, 79). The structure clarifies the role of calcium and amino acid residues in catalysis. Calcium acts as a Lewis acid to activate the scissile ester carbonyl bond of 1,2-diacylqlycerophospholipids and binds to the lipid, and a His-Asp side chain dyad acts as a general base catalyst to activate a water molecule nucleophile. consistent with the absence of any acyl enzyme intermediates, and is also comparable to the catalytic mechanism of serine proteases. The catalytic residues and the calcium ion are at the end of a deep cleft (ca. 14 Å) in the enzyme. of this cleft contact the hydrocarbon portion of the

15

20

25

30

ŧ

phospholipid and are composed of hydrophobic and aromatic residues. The positively-charged amino-terminal helix is situated above the opening of the hydrophobic cleft. Several lines of evidence suggest that the N-terminal portion is the interfacial binding site (Achari et al., Cold Spring Harbor Symp. Quant. Biol. 1987, 52, 441; Cho et al., J. Biol. Chem. 1988, 263, 11237; Yang et al., Biochem. J. 1989, 262, 855; and Noel et al., J. Am. Chem. Soc. 1990, 112, 3704).

Much work has been reported in recent years on the study of the mechanism and properties of PLA2-catalyzed hydrolysis of phospholipids. In in vitro assays, PLA2 displays a lag phase during which the enzyme adsorbs to the substrate bilayer and a process called interfacial activation occurs. This activation may involve desolvation of the enzyme/lipid interface or a change in the physical state of the lipid around the cleft opening. Evidence favoring this hypothesis comes from studies revealing that rapid changes in PLAactivity occur concurrently with changes in the fluorescence of a membrane probe (Burack et al., Biochemistry 1993, 32, 583). This suggests that lipid rearrangement is occurring during the interfacial activation process. PLA activity is maximal around the melting temperature of the lipid, where regions of gel and liquid-crystalline lipid coexist. also consistent with the sensitivity of PLA, activity to temperature and to the composition of the substrate, both of which can lead to structurally distinct lipid arrangements separated by a boundary region. Fluorescence microscopy was used to simultaneously identify the physical state of the lipid and the position of the enzyme during catalysis (Grainger et al., FEBS Lett. 1989, 252, 73). These studies clearly show that PLA, binds exclusively at the boundary region between liquid and solid phase lipid. While the hydrolysis of the secondary ester bond of 1,2diacylglycerophospholipids catalyzed by the enzyme is rela-

Bull Hotel

w.

10

15

20

25

30

1

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 146 -

tively simple, the mechanistic and kinetic picture is clouded by the complexity of the enzyme-substrate interaction. A remarkable characteristic of PLA, is that maximal catalytic activity is observed on substrate that is aggregated (i.e. phospholipid above its critical micelle concentration), while low levels of activity are observed on monomeric substrate. As a result, competitive inhibitors of PLA, either have a high affinity for the active site of the enzyme before it binds to the substrate bilayer or partition into the membrane and compete for the active site with the phospholipid substrate. Although a number of inhibitors appear to show promising inhibition of PLA2 in biochemical assays (Yuan et al., J. Am. Chem. Soc. 1987, 109, 8071; Lombardo et al., J. Biol. Chem. 1985, 260, 7234; Washburn et al., J. Biol. Chem. 1991, 266, 5042; Campbell et al., J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun. 1988, 1560; and Davidson et al., Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun. 1986, 137, 587), reports describing in vivo activity are limited (Miyake et al., J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther. 1992, 263, 1302).

In one preferred embodiment, oligomeric compounds of the invention are selected for their potential to interact with, and preferably inhibit, the enzyme PLA2. Thus, compounds of the invention can be used for topical and/or systemic treatment of inflammatory diseases including atopic dermatitis and inflammatory bowel disease. In selecting the functional groups, advantage can be taken of PLA2's preference for anionic vesicles over zwitterionic vesicles. Preferred compounds of the invention for assay for PLA2 include those having aromatic diversity groups to facilitate binding to the cleft of the PLA2 enzyme (Oinuma et al., J. Med. Chem. 1991, 34, 2260; Marki et al., Agents Actions 1993, 38, 202; and Tanaka et al., J. Antibiotics 1992, 45, 1071). Benzyl and 4-hexylbenzyl groups are preferred aromatic diversity groups. PLA2-directed oligomeric compounds of the invention can

M

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

1

further include hydrophobic functional groups such as tetraethylene glycol groups. Since the PLA<sub>2</sub> enzyme has a hydrophobic channel, hydrophobicity is believed to be an important property of inhibitors of the enzyme.

After each round of synthesis as described in the above examples, the resulting pools of compounds are screened for inhibition of human type II PLA<sub>2</sub> enzymatic activity. The assay is effected at the conclusion of synthesis to identify the wining compounds of that synthesis. Concurrently, the libraries additionally can be screened in other *in vitro* assays to determine further mechanisms of inhibition.

The pools of the oligomeric compound libraries are screened for inhibition of PLA2 in the assay using E. coli labeled with 3H-oleic acid (Franson et al., J. Lipid Res. 1974, 15, 380; and Davidson et al., J. Biol. Chem. 1987, 262, 1698) as the substrate. Type II PLA, (originally isolated from synovial fluid), expressed in a baculovirus system and partially purified, serves as a source of the enzyme. series of dilutions of each the library pools is done in water: 10 µl of each pool is incubated for 5 minutes at room temperature with a mixture of 10  $\mu$ l PLA<sub>2</sub>, 20  $\mu$ l 5X PLA<sub>2</sub> Buffer (500 mM Tris 7.0-7.5, 5 mM  $CaCl_2$ ), and 50  $\mu l$  water. Samples of each pool are run in duplicate. At this point, 10 µl of 'H E. coli cells is added. This mixture is incubated at 37°C for 15 minutes. The enzymatic reaction is stopped with the addition of 50 µl 2M HCl and 50 µl fatty-acid-free BSA (20 mg/ml PBS), vortexed for 5 seconds, and centrifuged at high speed for 5 minutes. 165 µl of each supernate is then put into a scintillation vial containing 6 ml of scintillant (ScintiVerse) and cpms are measured in a Beckman Liquid Scintillation Counter. As a control, a reaction without the combinatorial pool is run alongside the other reactions as well as a baseline reaction containing no oligomeric compounds as well as no PLA2 enzyme. CPMs are corrected for by subtracting the baseline from each reaction data point.

 10

15

20

25

30

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 148 -

Confirmation of the "winners" is made to confirm that the oligomeric compound binds to enzyme rather than substrate and that the inhibition of any oligomeric compound selected is specific for type II  $PLA_2$ . An assay using  $^{14}C$ -phosphatidyl ethanolamine (14C-PE) as substrate, rather than E. coli membrane, is used to insure enzyme rather than substrate specificity. Micelles of 14C-PE and deoxycholate are incubated with the enzyme and oligomer. 14C-labeled arachidonic acid released as a result of PLA2-catalyzed hydrolysis is separated from substrate by thin layer chromatography and the radioactive product is quantitated. The "winner" is compared to phosphatidyl ethanolamine, the preferred substrate of human type II PLA2, to confirm its activity. PLA2 from other sources (snake venom, pancreatic, bee venom) and phospholipase C, phospholipase D and lysophospholipase can be used to further confirm that the inhibition is specific for human type II  $PLA_2$ .

## PROCEDURE 5

Probes for the detection of specific proteins and mRNA in biological samples

For the reliable, rapid, simultaneous quantification of multiple varieties of proteins or mRNA in a biological sample without the need to purify the protein or mRNA from other cellular components, a protein or mRNA of interest from a suitable biological sample, i.e., a blood borne virus, a bacterial pathogen product in stool, urine and other like biological samples, is identified using standard microbiological techniques. A probe comprising an oligomeric compound of the invention is identified by a combinatorial search as noted in the above examples. Preferred for the mRNA probe are compounds synthesized to include "nucleobase" diversity groups (adenine, guanine, thymine and cytosine as the letters) complementary to at least a portion of the

20 ij. D

10

15

25

30

nucleic acid sequence of the mRNA. Preferred for the protein probe are compounds synthesized to include chemical functional groups that act as hydrogen bond donors and acceptors, sulfhydryl groups, hydrophobic lipophilic moieties capable of hydrophobic interactions groups and groups capable of ionic interactions. The probe is immobilized on insoluble CPG solid support utilizing the procedure of Pon, R. T., Protocols for Oligonucleotides and Analogs, Agrawal, S., Ed., Humana Press, Totowa, NJ, 1993, p 465-496. A known aliquot of the biological sample under investigation is incubated with the insoluble CPG support having the probe thereon for a time sufficient to hybridize the protein or mRNA to probe and thus to link them via the probe to the solid support. immobilizes protein or mRNA present in the sample to the CPG support. Other non-immobilized materials and components are then washed off the CPG with a wash media suitable for use with the biological sample. The mRNA on the support is labeled with ethidium bromide, biotin or a commercial radionucleotide and the amount of label immobilized on the CPG support is measured to indicate the amount of mRNA present in the biological sample. In a similar a protein is also labeled and quantified.

#### PROCEDURE 6

# Leukotriene B4 assay

Leukotriene B4 (LTB4) has been implicated in a variety of human inflammatory diseases, and its pharmacological effects are mediated via its interaction with specific surface cell receptors. Library subsets are screened for competitive inhibition of radiolabeled LTB4 binding to a receptor preparation.

A Nenquest<sup>™</sup> Drug Discovery System Kit (NEN Research Products, Boston, MA) is used to select an inhibitor of the interaction of Leukotriene  $B_4$  (LTB $_4$ ) with receptors on a preparation of guinea pig spleen membrane. [3H] Leukotriene

15

20

25

30

35

 $B_4$  reagent is prepared by adding 5 mL of ligand diluent (phosphate buffer containing NaCl, MgCl<sub>2</sub>, EDTA and Bacitracin, pH 7.2) to 0.25 mL of the radioligand. The receptor preparation is made by thawing the concentrate, adding 35 mL of ligand diluent and swirling gently in order to resuspend the receptor homogeneously. Reagents are kept on ice during the course of the experiment, and the remaining portions are stored at -20°C.

Library subsets prepared as per general procedure of examples above are diluted to 5  $\mu M$ , 50  $\mu M$  and 500  $\mu M$  in phosphate buffer (1x PBS, 0.1% azide and 0.1% BSA, pH 7.2), yielding final test concentrations of 0.5  $\mu M$ , 5  $\mu M$  and 50  $\mu M$ , respectively. Samples are assayed in duplicate. [³H] LTB4 (25  $\mu L$ ) is added to 25  $\mu L$  of either appropriately diluted standard (unlabeled LTB4) or library subset. The receptor suspension (0.2 mL) is added to each tube. Samples are incubated at 4°C for 2 hours. Controls include [³H] LTB4 without receptor suspension (total count vials), and sample of ligand and receptor without library molecules (standard).

After the incubation period, the samples are filtered through GF/B paper that had been previously rinsed with cold saline. The contents of each tube are aspirated onto the filter paper to remove unbound ligand from the membrane preparation, and the tubes washed (2 x 4 mL) with cold saline. The filter paper is removed from the filtration unit and the filter disks are placed in appropriate vials for scintillation counting. Fluor is added, and the vials shaken and allowed to stand at room temperature for 2 to 3 hours prior to counting. The counts/minute (cpm) obtained for each sample are subtracted from those obtained from the total count vials to determine the net cpm for each sample. The degree of inhibition of binding for each library subset is determined relative to the standard (sample of ligand and receptor without library molecules).

Each of the published documents mentioned in this

specification are herein incorporated in their entirety.

Those skilled in the art will appreciate that numerous changes and modifications may be made to the preferred embodiments of the invention and that such changes and modifications may be made without departing from the spirit of the invention. It is therefore intended that the appended claims cover all such equivalent variations as fall within the true spirit and scope of the invention.

# WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. An oligomeric compound comprising a plurality of aminodiol monomer subunits joined by linking groups, wherein each of said aminodiol monomer subunits has one of the structures I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, or XI;

wherein:

10

each x is, independently, 0 to 5;

na, nb and nc are each, independently, 0 to 2, where the sum of na, nb and nc is from 1 to 5;

 $\mathtt{R_1}$  is -T-L or a base labile protecting group;

- 153 -

T is a single bond, a methylene group or a group having formula:

$$\{ [CR_6R_7]_m - (R_5) - [CR_8R_9]_n - [C(R_{10})_]_p - (E) - \}_q - (E) - (E)$$

wherein:

10

15

25

30

II.

ħ

 $R_{10}$  is =0, =S, or =NR<sub>11</sub>; 5

 $R_{\text{S}}$  and E, independently, are a single bond, CH=CH, C=C, O, S,  $NR_{11}$ , or  $C_6-C_{14}$  aryl;

each  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$ ,  $R_9$ ,  $R_{11}$ ,  $R_{12}$  and  $R_{13}$  are, independently, H, alkyl or haloalkyl having 1 to about 10 carbon atoms, alkenyl having 2 to about 10 carbon atoms, alkynyl having 2 to about 10 carbon atoms, or aryl having 7 to about 14 carbon atoms;

m and n, independently, are 0 to 5;

p is 0 or 1;

q is 1 to about 10;

L is H, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2 - C_{10}$  alkenyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2$ - $C_{10}$  alkynyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_4$ - $C_7$  carbocyclic alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_4\text{--}C_7$ 20 carbocyclic alkenyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_4-C_7$ carbocyclic alkynyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_{\epsilon}\text{-}C_{14}$  aryl, an ether having 2 to 10 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 oxygen or sulfur atoms, a nitrogen containing heterocycle, a sulfur containing heterocycle, an oxygen containing heterocycle, a metal coordination group, a conjugate group, halogen, hydroxyl (OH), thiol (SH), keto (C=O), carboxyl (COOH), amide (CONR<sub>12</sub>), amidine (C(=NH)NR<sub>12</sub>R<sub>13</sub>), guanidine (NHC(=NH)NR<sub>12</sub>R<sub>13</sub>), glutamyl ( $R_{12}$ OOCCH( $NR_{12}R_{13}$ )( $CH_2$ ) $_2$ C(=0), nitrate (ONO $_2$ ), nitro  $(NO_2)$ , nitrile (CN), trifluoromethyl  $(CF_3)$ , trifluoromethoxy  $(OCF_3)$ , O-alkyl, S-alkyl, NH-alkyl, N-dialkyl, O-aralkyl, Saralkyl, NH-aralkyl, amino  $(NH_2)$ , azido  $(N_3)$ , hydrazino  $(NHNH_2)$ , hydroxylamino  $(ONH_2)$ , sulfoxide (SO), sulfone  $(SO_2)$ ,

sulfide (S-), disulfide (S-S), silyl, a nucleosidic base, an amino acid side chain, a carbohydrate, a biopharmaceutically active moiety, or group capable of hydrogen bonding where the substituent groups are selected from hydroxyl, amino, alkoxy, alcohol, benzyl, phenyl, nitro, thiol, thioalkoxy, halogen, alkyl, aryl, alkenyl, and alkynyl groups;

 $R_2$  is hydrogen or  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl;

 $R_3$  and  $R_4$  are independently hydrogen, an acid labile hydroxyl protecting group, a linking group or a conjugate group, wherein said linking group has the formula:

 $-P_{-}^{J_{1}}$ 

wherein:

10

 15

20

25

 $J_1$  is =0 or =S;

 $J_0$  is OH or  $N(Y_0)T_0$ ;

 $Y_0$  is H or  $[Q_2]_1-Z_2$ ;

 $T_0 \text{ is } \left[Q_1\right]_k - Z_1 \text{, or together } Y_0 \text{ and } T_0 \text{ are joined in a nitrogen heterocycle;}$ 

 $Q_1$  and  $Q_2$  independently are  $C_2$ - $C_{10}$  alkyl,  $C_1$ - $C_{10}$  alkenyl,  $C_2$ - $C_{10}$  alkynyl,  $C_4$ - $C_7$  carbocylo alkyl  $C_4$ - $C_7$  carbocylo alkenyl, a heterocycle, an ether having 2 to 10 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 oxygen or sulfur atoms, a polyalkyl glycol, or  $C_7$ - $C_{14}$  aralkyl;

j and k independently are 0 or 1;

 $\rm Z_1$  and  $\rm Z_2$  independently are H,  $\rm C_1-\rm C_2$  alkyl,  $\rm C_2-\rm C_{23}$ 

alkenyl,  $C_2-C_{20}$  alkynyl,  $C_6-C_{14}$  aryl,  $C_7-C_{15}$  aralkyl, halogen, CH=O, OR<sub>12</sub>, SR<sub>12</sub>, NR<sub>12</sub>R<sub>13</sub>, C(=NH)NR<sub>12</sub>R<sub>13</sub>, CH(NR<sub>12</sub>R<sub>13</sub>),

NHC(=NH)NR $_{12}$ R $_{13}$ , CH(NH $_2$ )C(=0)OH, C(=0)NR $_{12}$ R $_{13}$ , C(=0)OR $_{12}$ , a metal coordination group, a reporter group, a nitrogen-containing heterocycle, a purine, a pyrimidine, a phosphate group, a

30 polyether group, or a polyethylene glycol group; and

- 155 -

10

provided that at least one of said aminodiol monomer subunits in said oligomeric compound does not have structure III.

- The oligomeric compound of claim 1 wherein said  $J_1$ 5 is =0 or =S and said  $J_2$  is OH.
  - The oligomeric compound of claim 1 wherein said  $J_1$ is =0, said  $J_2$  is  $N\left(Y_0\right)T_0$  and at least two of said  $N\left(Y_0\right)T_0$  are the same.
  - The oligomeric compound of claim 1 wherein said  $J_1$ is =0, said  $J_2$  is  $N(Y_0)T_0$  and wherein at least two of said  $N(Y_0)T_0$  are different.
  - The oligomeric compound of claim 1 wherein each of said  $R_1$  are the same.
  - The oligomeric compound of claim 1 wherein at least two of said  $R_1$  are different.
  - The oligomeric compound of claim 1 wherein each of said aminodiol monomer subunits are the same.
  - The oligomeric compound of claim 1 wherein at least 8. two of said aminodiol monomer subunits are different.

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 156 -

9. A library of oligomers, each of said oligomers comprising a plurality of aminodiol monomer subunits joined by linking groups, said aminodiol monomer subunits, each of said subunits having structure I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, or XI;

wherein:

10

each x is, independently, 0 to 5;

na, nb and nc are each, independently, 0 to 2, where the sum of na, nb and nc is from 1 to 5;

 $\mathtt{R}_\mathtt{l}$  is -T-L or a base labile protecting group;

T is a single bond, a methylene group or a group having formula:

$${ [CR_6R_7]_m - (R_5) - [CR_8R_9]_n - [C(R_{10})]_p - (E) - }_q -$$

5 wherein:

 $R_{10}$  is =0, =S, or =NR<sub>11</sub>;

R<sub>5</sub> and E, independently, are a single bond, CH=CH,  $C \equiv C$ , O, S,  $NR_{11}$ , or  $C_6 - C_{14}$  aryl;

each  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$ ,  $R_9$ ,  $R_{11}$ ,  $R_{12}$  and  $R_{13}$  are,

10 independently, H, alkyl or haloalkyl having 1 to about 10 carbon atoms, alkenyl having 2 to about 10 carbon atoms, alkynyl having 2 to about 10 carbon atoms, or aryl having 7 to about 14 carbon atoms;

m and n, independently, are 0 to 5;

p is 0 or 1;

q is 1 to about 10;

L is H, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2$ - $C_{10}$  alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkenyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2$ - $C_{10}$  alkynyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_4$ - $C_7$  carbocyclic alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_4$ - $C_7$ carbocyclic alkenyl, substituted or unsubstituted C4-C7 carbocyclic alkynyl, substituted or unsubstituted C<sub>e</sub>-C<sub>14</sub> aryl, an ether having 2 to 10 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 oxygen or sulfur atoms, a nitrogen containing heterocycle, a sulfur containing heterocycle, an oxygen containing heterocycle, a metal coordination group, a conjugate group, halogen, hydroxyl (OH), thiol (SH), keto (C=O), carboxyl (COOH), amide  $(CONR_{12})$ , amidine  $(C(=NH)NR_{12}R_{13})$ , guanidine  $(NHC(=NH)NR_{12}R_{13})$ , glutamyl  $(R_{12}OOCCH(NR_{12}R_{13})(CH_2)_2C(=0)$ , nitrate  $(ONO_2)$ , nitro  $(NO_2)$ , nitrile (CN), trifluoromethyl  $(CF_3)$ , trifluoromethoxy (OCF<sub>3</sub>), O-alkyl, S-alkyl, NH-alkyl, N-dialkyl, O-aralkyl, Saralkyl, NH-aralkyl, amino (NH2), azido (N3), hydrazino (NHNH<sub>2</sub>), hydroxylamino (ONH<sub>2</sub>), sulfoxide (SO), sulfone (SO<sub>2</sub>),

**3** 20

15

25

The first train and the first the special for the first train for the first train for the first train for the

15

20

\* \*

sulfide (S-), disulfide (S-S), silyl, a nucleosidic base, an amino acid side chain, a carbohydrate, a biopharmaceutically active moiety, or group capable of hydrogen bonding where the substituent groups are selected from hydroxyl, amino, alkoxy, alcohol, benzyl, phenyl, nitro, thiol, thioalkoxy, halogen, alkyl, aryl, alkenyl, and alkynyl groups;

 $R_2$  is hydrogen or  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl;

 $R_3$  and  $R_4$  are independently hydrogen, an acid labile hydroxyl protecting group, a linking group or a conjugate group, wherein said linking group has the formula:



wherein:

 $J_1$  is =0 or =S;

 $J_2$  is OH or  $N(Y_0)T_0$ ;

 $Y_0$  is H or  $[Q_2]_1 - Z_2$ ;

 $T_0$  is  $\left[Q_1\right]_k-Z_1,$  or together  $Y_0$  and  $T_0$  are joined in a nitrogen heterocycle;

 $Q_1$  and  $Q_2$  independently are  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkyl,  $C_2-C_{12}$  alkenyl,  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkynyl,  $C_4-C_7$  carbocylo alkyl  $C_4-C_7$  carbocylo alkenyl, a heterocycle, an ether having 2 to 10 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 oxygen or sulfur atoms, a polyalkyl glycol, or  $C_7-C_{14}$  aralkyl;

j and k independently are 0 or 1;

 $\rm Z_1$  and  $\rm Z_2$  independently are H,  $\rm C_1\text{--}C_2$  alkyl,  $\rm C_2\text{--}C_{20}$ 

- alkenyl,  $C_2$ - $C_{20}$  alkynyl,  $C_6$ - $C_{14}$  aryl,  $C_7$ - $C_{15}$  aralkyl, halogen, CH=O,  $OR_{12}$ ,  $SR_{12}$ ,  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , C (=NH)  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , CH ( $NR_{12}R_{13}$ ), NHC (=NH)  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , CH ( $NH_2$ ) C (=O) OH, C (=O)  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , C (=O)  $OR_{12}$ , a metal coordination group, a reporter group, a nitrogen-containing heterocycle, a purine, a pyrimidine, a phosphate group, a
- 30 polyether group, or a polyethylene glycol group; and

15

.

provided that at least one of said aminodiol monomer subunits in each oligomeric compound of said library does not have structure III.

- 10. The library of claim 9 wherein said  $J_1$  is =0 or =S and said  $J_2$  is OH.
  - 11. The library of claim 9 wherein said  $J_1$  is =0, said  $J_2$  is  $N(Y_0)\,T_0$  and at least two of said  $N(Y_0)\,T_0$  are the same.
  - 12. The library of claim 9 wherein said  $J_1$  is =0, said  $J_2$  is  $N(Y_0)\,T_0$  and at least two of said  $N(Y_0)\,T_0$  are different.
  - 13. The library of claim 9 wherein each of said  $R_1$  is the same.
  - 14. The library of claim 9 wherein at least two of said  $R_{\text{l}}$  are different.
  - 15. A method for preparing an oligomer comprising:

    (a) selecting an aminodiol monomer subunit having the structure I , II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, or XI;

wherein:

5

10

each x is, independently, 0 to 5;

na, nb and nc are each, independently, 0 to 2, where the sum of na, nb and nc is from 1 to 5;

 $R_1$  is a base labile amino protecting group;

 $R_2$  is hydrogen or  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl;

one of  $R_3$  or  $R_4$  is hydrogen or an activated phosphite group and the other of  $R_3$  or  $R_4$  is an acid labile hydroxyl protecting group;

(b) attaching said aminodiol monomer subunit to a

5

10

15

20

25

solid support to form a solid support bound aminodiol monomer subunit;

- (c) treating said acid labile hydroxyl protecting group with a dilute acid to form a free hydroxyl group;
- (d) reacting said free hydroxyl group with a further aminodiol monomer subunit having structure I, II, III, IV, V, VI, or VII, VIII, IX, X, or XI thereby forming an oligomeric compound bound to said solid support, said oligomeric compound containing a phosphite linkage;
- (e) optionally iteratively repeating steps (c) and(d) to increase the length of the oligomeric compound boundto said solid support;
- (f) optionally, prior to step (c) or after step
  (d) oxidizing said phosphite linkage to form a phosphate
  linking group wherein said linking groups are selected having
  formula:

wherein:

 $J_1$  is =0 or =S;

 $J_2$  is OH or  $N(Y_0)T_0$ ;

 $Y_0$  is H or  $[Q_2]_1-Z_2$ ;

 $T_0$  is  $\left[Q_1\right]_k-Z_1,$  or together  $Y_0$  and  $T_0$  are joined in a nitrogen heterocycle;

- $Q_1$  and  $Q_2$  independently are  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkyl,  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkenyl,  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkynyl,  $C_4-C_7$  carbocylo alkyl  $C_4-C_7$  carbocylo alkenyl, a heterocycle, an ether having 2 to 10 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 oxygen or sulfur atoms, a polyalkyl glycol, or  $C_7-C_{14}$  aralkyl;
  - j and k independently are 0 or 1;
- 30  $Z_1$  and  $Z_2$  independently are H,  $C_1-C_2$  alkyl,  $C_2-C_{20}$

alkenyl,  $C_2$ - $C_{20}$  alkynyl,  $C_6$ - $C_{14}$  aryl,  $C_7$ - $C_{15}$  aralkyl, halogen, CH=O,  $OR_{12}$ ,  $SR_{12}$ ,  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , C (=NH)  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , CH ( $NR_{12}R_{13}$ ), NHC (=NH)  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , CH ( $NH_2$ ) C (=O) OH, C (=O)  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , C (=O)  $OR_{12}$ , a metal coordination group, a reporter group, a nitrogen-containing heterocycle, a purine, a pyrimidine, a phosphate group, a polyether group, or a polyethylene glycol group;

(g) prior to step (e) or after step (f) contacting said solid support bound aminodic monomer subunit or said support bound oligomeric compound with a base to remove said base labile amino protecting group to form the solid support bound aminodic monomer subunit or support bound oligomeric compound having a free amine, and derivatizing said free amine with a group of the formula: wherein:

T is a single bond, a methylene group or a group having formula:

$$\{ [CR_6R_7]_m - (R_5) - [CR_8R_9]_n - [C(R_{10})]_p - (E) - \}_q - (E) - (E)$$

where:

 $R_{10}$  is =0, =S, or =N $R_{11}$ ;

 $$R_{5}$$  and E, independently, are a single bond, CH=CH, C=C, O, S,  $NR_{11},$  or  $C_{6}-C_{14}$  aryl;

each  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$ ,  $R_9$ ,  $R_{11}$ ,  $R_{12}$  and  $R_{13}$  are, independently, H, alkyl or haloalkyl having 1 to about 10 carbon atoms, alkenyl having 2 to about 10 carbon atoms, alkynyl having 2 to about 10 carbon atoms, or aryl having 7 to about 14 carbon atoms;

m and n, independently, are 0 to 5;

p is 0 or 1;

q is 1 to about 10;

L is H, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2$ - $C_{10}$  alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2$ - $C_{10}$  alkenyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2$ - $C_{10}$  alkynyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_4$ -

25

30

10

 $C_7$  carbocyclic alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_4$ - $C_7$ 

carbocyclic alkenyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_4 - C_7$ carbocyclic alkynyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_{\varepsilon}\text{-}C_{14}$  aryl, an ether having 2 to 10 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 oxygen or sulfur atoms, a nitrogen containing heterocycle, a sulfur containing heterocycle, an oxygen containing heterocycle, a metal coordination group, a conjugate group, halogen, hydroxyl (OH), thiol (SH), keto (C=O), carboxyl (COOH), amide (CONR $_{12}$ ), amidine (C(=NH)NR $_{12}$ R $_{13}$ ), guanidine (NHC(=NH)NR $_{12}$ R $_{13}$ ), glutamyl ( $R_{12}OOCCH(NR_{12}R_{13})(CH_2)_2C(=0)$ , nitrate ( $ONO_2$ ), nitro 10  $(NO_2)$ , nitrile (CN), trifluoromethyl  $(CF_3)$ , trifluoromethoxy (OCF3), O-alkyl, S-alkyl, NH-alkyl, N-dialkyl, O-aralkyl, S-15 aralkyl, NH-aralkyl, amino  $(NH_2)$ , azido  $(N_3)$ , hydrazino  $(NHNH_2)$ , hydroxylamino  $(ONH_2)$ , sulfoxide (SO), sulfone  $(SO_2)$ , sulfide (S-), disulfide (S-S), silyl, a nucleosidic base, an amino acid side chain, a carbohydrate, a biopharmaceutically active moiety, or group capable of hydrogen bonding where the substituent groups are selected from hydroxyl, amino, alkoxy, alcohol, benzyl, phenyl, nitro, thiol, thioalkoxy, halogen, alkyl, aryl, alkenyl, and alkynyl groups;

- optionally repeating steps (c) and (d) followed by step (g) to increase the length of the oligomeric compound bound to said solid support;
- treating said oligomeric compound bound to said solid support with acid to deprotect any protecting 25 groups; and
  - cleaving said oligomeric compound from said (j) solid support.
  - The process of claim 15 wherein said step (g) is conducted after said step (b).
  - The process of claim 15 wherein said step (g) is 17. conducted prior to step (d) for the addition of at least one monomeric subunit to said oligomeric compound.

30

WO 96/40672 PCT/US96/09604

- 164 -

18. The process of claim 15 wherein said step (g) is conducted prior to each iteration of said step (d).

- 19. The process of claim 15 wherein said step (g) is conducted only after at least one iteration of said step (e).
- 5 20. The process of claim 15 wherein said step (g) is conducted after said step (f) for the addition of at least one monomeric subunit to said oligomeric compound.
  - 21. A method for preparing a combinatorial library comprising:
  - (a) selecting a plurality of aminodiol monomer subunits having the structure I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, or XI:

wherein:

each x is, independently, 0 to 5;

na, nb and nc are each, independently, 0 to 2, where the sum of na, nb and nc is from 1 to 5;

 $R_1$  is a base labile amino protecting group;

 $R_2$  is hydrogen or  $C_1-C_{10}$  alkyl;

one of  $R_3$  or  $R_4$  is hydrogen or an activated phosphite group and the other of  $R_3$  or  $R_4$  is an acid labile hydroxyl protecting group;

(b) attaching said aminodiol monomer subunits to a

10

5

The first and the first see that the second second

5

10

15

20

25

solid support to form a solid support bound aminodiol monomer subunits;

- (c) treating said acid labile hydroxyl protecting groups with a dilute acid to form a free hydroxyl groups;
- (d) reacting said free hydroxyl groups with further aminodiol monomer subunits having structure I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII, IX, X, or XI thereby forming an oligomeric compound bound to said solid support, said oligomeric compound containing a phosphite linkage;
- (e) optionally iteratively repeating steps (c) and(d) to increase the length of the oligomeric compound boundto said solid support;
- (f) optionally, prior to step (c) or after step(d) oxidizing said phosphite linkage to form phosphatelinking groups having formula:



wherein:

 $J_1$  is =0 or =S;

 $J_2$  is OH or  $N(Y_0)T_0$ ;

 $Y_0$  is H or  $[Q_2]_1-Z_2$ ;

 $T_0$  is  $\left[Q_1\right]_k-Z_1,$  or together  $Y_0$  and  $T_0$  are joined in a nitrogen heterocycle;

 $Q_1$  and  $Q_2$  independently are  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkyl,  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkenyl,  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkynyl,  $C_4-C_7$  carbocylo alkyl  $C_4-C_7$  carbocylo alkenyl, a heterocycle, an ether having 2 to 10 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 oxygen or sulfur atoms, a polyalkyl glycol, or  $C_7-C_{14}$  aralkyl;

j and k independently are 0 or 1;

 $Z_1$  and  $Z_2$  independently are H,  $C_1$ - $C_2$  alkyl,  $C_2$ - $C_{20}$ 

30 alkenyl,  $C_2-C_{20}$  alkynyl,  $C_6-C_{14}$  aryl,  $C_7-C_{15}$  aralkyl, halogen,

15

20

25

30

CH=O,  $OR_{12}$ ,  $SR_{12}$ ,  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , C (=NH)  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , CH ( $NR_{12}R_{13}$ ), NHC (=NH)  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , CH ( $NH_2$ ) C (=O) OH, C (=O)  $NR_{12}R_{13}$ , C (=O)  $OR_{12}$ , a metal coordination group, a reporter group, a nitrogen-containing heterocycle, a purine, a pyrimidine, a phosphate group, a polyether group, or a polyethylene glycol group;

(g) prior to step (e) or after step (f) contacting said solid support bound aminodiol monomer subunits or said support bound oligomeric compounds with a base to remove said base labile amino protecting groups to form the solid support bound aminodiol monomer subunits or support bound oligomeric compounds having a free amine, and derivatizing said free amine with a group of the formula

-T-L

wherein:

T is a single bond, a methylene group or a group having formula:

$$\{ [CR_6R_7]_m - (R_5) - [CR_8R_9]_n - [C(R_{10})]_p - (E) - \}_q -$$

where:

 $R_{10}$  is =0, =S, or =N $R_{11}$ ;

 $$R_{5}$$  and E, independently, are a single bond, CH=CH, C=C, O, S,  $NR_{11},$  or  $C_{6}-C_{14}$  aryl;

each  $R_6$ ,  $R_7$ ,  $R_8$ ,  $R_9$ ,  $R_{11}$ ,  $R_{12}$  and  $R_{13}$  are, independently, H, alkyl or haloalkyl having 1 to about 10 carbon atoms, alkenyl having 2 to about 10 carbon atoms, alkynyl having 2 to about 10 carbon atoms, or aryl having 7 to about 14 carbon atoms;

m and n, independently, are 0 to 5;

p is 0 or 1;

q is 1 to about 10;

L is H, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkenyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_2-C_{10}$  alkynyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_4-C_{10}$ 

M

5

10

15

20

 $C_7$  carbocyclic alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_4$ - $C_7$ carbocyclic alkenyl, substituted or unsubstituted C4-C7 carbocyclic alkynyl, substituted or unsubstituted  $C_{\epsilon}$ - $C_{14}$  aryl, an ether having 2 to 10 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 oxygen or sulfur atoms, a nitrogen containing heterocycle, a sulfur containing heterocycle, an oxygen containing heterocycle, a metal coordination group, a conjugate group, halogen, hydroxyl (OH), thiol (SH), keto (C=O), carboxyl (COOH), amide  $(CONR_{12})$ , amidine  $(C(=NH)NR_{12}R_{13})$ , guanidine  $(NHC(=NH)NR_{12}R_{13})$ , glutamyl ( $R_{12}OOCCH(NR_{12}R_{13})$  ( $CH_2$ )<sub>2</sub>C(=0), nitrate ( $ONO_2$ ), nitro  $(NO_2)$ , nitrile (CN), trifluoromethyl  $(CF_3)$ , trifluoromethoxy  $(OCF_3)$ , O-alkyl, S-alkyl, NH-alkyl, N-dialkyl, O-aralkyl, Saralkyl, NH-aralkyl, amino  $(NH_2)$ , azido  $(N_3)$ , hydrazino (NHNH<sub>2</sub>), hydroxylamino (ONH<sub>2</sub>), sulfoxide (SO), sulfone (SO<sub>2</sub>), sulfide (S-), disulfide (S-S), silyl, a nucleosidic base, an amino acid side chain, a carbohydrate, a biopharmaceutically active moiety, or group capable of hydrogen bonding where the substituent groups are selected from hydroxyl, amino, alkoxy, alcohol, benzyl, phenyl, nitro, thiol, thioalkoxy, halogen, alkyl, aryl, alkenyl, and alkynyl groups;

- (h) optionally repeating steps (c) and (d) followed by step (g) to increase the length of the oligomeric compounds bound to said solid support;
- (h) treating said oligomeric compounds bound to 25 said solid support with acid to deprotect any protecting groups; and
  - (i) cleaving said oligomeric compounds from said solid support.
- 22. The process of claim 21 wherein said step (g) is 30 conducted after said step (b).
  - 23. The process of claim 21 wherein said step (g) is conducted prior to step (e) for the addition of at least one monomeric subunit to each of said oligomeric compounds.

- 24. The process of claim 21 wherein said step (g) is conducted prior to each iteration of said step (e).
- 25. The process of claim 21 wherein said step (g) is conducted only after at least one iteration of said step (e).
- 5 26. The process of claim 21 wherein said step (g) is conducted after said step (f) for the addition of at least one monomeric subunit to each of said oligomeric compounds.

Applicant or Patentee: Normand Hebert

Serial No.: PCT/US96/09604 Attorney's Docket No.: ISIS-2297

Date Filed or Issued: June 7, 1996

For: Combinatorial Libraries Having Aminodiol Monomer Subunits

VERIFIED STATEMENT (DECLARATION) CLAIMING SMALL ENTITY STATUS (37 CFR 1.9(d) and 1.27(c)) - SMALL BUSINESS CONCERN

I hereby declare that I am:

- ( ) the owner of the small business concern identified below:
- (XX) an official empowered to act on behalf of the concern identified below:

NAME OF CONCERN: ISIS PHARMACEUTICALS, INC. ADDRESS OF CONCERN: 2292 FARADAY AVENUE, CARLSBAD, CALIFORNIA 92008

I hereby declare that the above-identified small business concern qualifies as a small business concern as defined in 13 CFR 121.12, and reproduced in 37 CFR 1.9(d), for purposes of paying reduced fees under section 41(a) and (b) of Title 35, United States Code, in that: (1) the number of employees of the concern, including those of its affiliates, does not exceed 500 persons; and (2) concern has not assigned, granted, conveyed, or licensed, and is under no obligation under contract or law to assign, grant, convey, or license, any rights in the invention to any person who could not be classified as an independent inventor if that person had made the invention, or to any concern which would not qualify as a small business concern or a nonprofit organization under this section. For purposes of this statement, (1) the number of employees of the business concern is the average over the previous fiscal year of the concern of the persons employed on a full-time, part-time or temporary basis during each of the pay periods of the fiscal year, and (2) concerns are affiliates of each other when either, directly or indirectly, one concern controls or has the power to control the other, or a third party or parties controls or has the power to control both.

I hereby declare that rights under contract or law have been conveyed to and remain with the small business concern identified above with regard to the invention entitled Combinatorial Libraries Having Aminodiol Monomer Subunits by inventor(s) Normand Hebert described in

- ( ) specification filed herewith.
- (XX) international application serial no. <u>PCT/US96/09604</u>, filed <u>June 7, 1996</u>.

If the rights held by the above-identified small business concern are not exclusive, each individual, concern or organization having rights in the invention is listed below\* and no rights to the invention are held by any person, other than the inventor, who would not qualify as an independent inventor under 37 CFR 1.9(c) if that person made the invention, or by any concern which would not qualify as a small business concern under 37 CFR 1.9(d), or a nonprofit organization under 37 CFR 1.9(e).

\*NOTE: Separate verified statements are required for each named person, concern or organization having rights to the invention averring to their status as small entities. (37 CFR 1.27)

## FULL NAME:

ADDRESS:

( ) INDIVIDUAL ( ) SMALL BUSINESS CONCERN ( ) NONPROFIT ORGANIZATION

#### FULL NAME:

ADDRESS:

( ) INDIVIDUAL ( ) SMALL BUSINESS CONCERN ( ) NONPROFIT ORGANIZATION

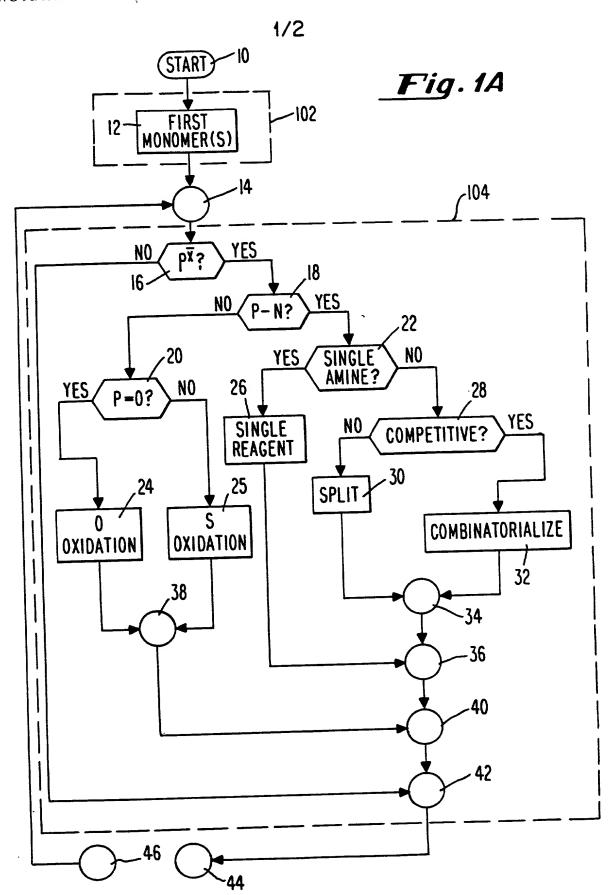
I acknowledge the duty to file, in this application or patent, notification of any change in status resulting in loss of entitlement to small entity status prior to paying, or at the time of paying, the earliest of the issue fee or any maintenance fee due after the date on which status as a small entity is no longer appropriate. (37 CFR 1.28(b))

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code, and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application, any patent issuing thereon, or any patent to which this verified statement is directed.

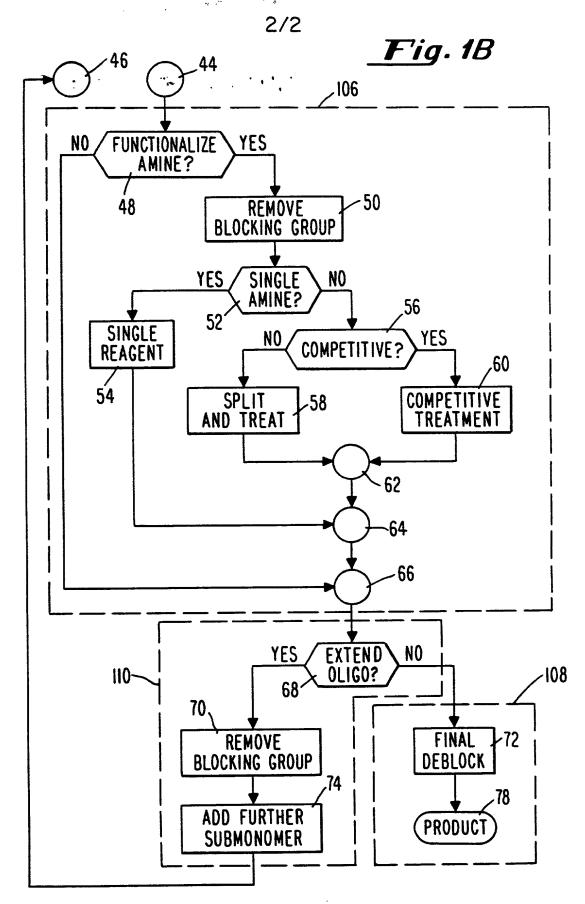
NAME OF PERSON SIGNING: TITLE OF PERSON SIGNING: ADDRESS OF PERSON SIGNING: B. Lynne Parshall Executive Vice President 2292 Faraday Avenue, Carlsbad, California 92008

November 25, 1997

DATE



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

# COMBINED DECLARATION AND POWER OF ATTORNEY



As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

My residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated below next to my name; and

I verily believe that I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled: COMBINATORIAL LIBRARIES HAVING AMINODIOL MONOMER SUBUNITS, the specification of which:

- ( ) is attached hereto.
- (XX) was filed on <u>June 7, 1996</u> as International Application Serial No. <u>PCT/US96/09604</u>.

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above identified specification, including the claims, as amended by any amendment referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose to the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office all information known to be material to the patentability of this application in accordance with 37 CFR § 1.56.

I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under 35 U.S.C. § 119 of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate listed below and have also identified below any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate having a filing date before that of any application on which priority is claimed:

Country	Number	Date Filed	Priority Claimed

# IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In Re Application of:

Normand Hebert

U.S. Serial No.: 08/973,381

International Serial No.: PCT/US96/09604

Filed: June 7, 1996

For: Combinatorial Libraries Having Aminodiol

Monomer Subunits

Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington DC 20231

Sir:

# ASSOCIATE POWER OF ATTORNEY

The undersigned, of the firm WOODCOCK WASHBURN KURTZ MACKIEWICZ & NORRIS LLP, One Liberty Place - 46th Floor, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania 19103, Attorney and/or Agents for Applicant(s), hereby appoints the following:

Robert B. Washburn Richard E. Kurtz John J. Mackiewicz Norman L. Norris Albert W. Preston, Jr. Dale M. Heist Philip S. Johnson John W. Caldwell Gary H. Levin Steven J. Rocci Dianne B. Elderkin Francis A. Paintin John P. Donohue, Jr. Henrik D. Parker Suzanne E. Miller Lynn B. Morreale Mark DeLuca Joseph Lucci	Registration No. 16,574 Registration No. 19,263 Registration No. 19,709 Registration No. 24,196 Registration No. 25,366 Registration No. 28,425 Registration No. 28,937 Registration No. 28,937 Registration No. 28,734 Registration No. 30,489 Registration No. 19,386 Registration No. 19,386 Registration No. 31,863 Registration No. 32,279 Registration No. 32,279 Registration No. 32,842 Registration No. 33,307	Michael P. Dunnam Michael D. Stein Albert J. Marcellino David R. Bailey Barbara L. Mullin Lynn A. Malinoski Lori Y. Beardell Doreen Yatko Trujillo Paul K. Legaard Kevin M. Flannery David A. Cherry Anthony J. Rossi Michael J. Swope Michael J. Swope Michael J. Bonella Harold H. Fullmer John E. McGlynn Gail Ann Dalickas Kimberly R. Hild	Registration No. 32,611 Registration No. 34,734 Registration No. 34,664 Registration No. 35,057 Registration No. 38,250 Registration No. 38,788 Registration No. 34,293 Registration No. 35,719 Registration No. 35,719 Registration No. 35,871 Registration No. 35,871 Registration No. 24,053 Registration No. 24,053 Registration No. P41,628 Registration No. P42,560 Registration No. P42,863 Registration No. 40,979 Registration No. 39,224
---	---	---	--

Lawrence A. Aaronson Jonathan M. Waldman Joseph R. Condo Michael K. Jones Registration No. 38,369 Registration No. 40,861 Registration No. P42,431 Registration No. P41,100

his/her associates with full power to prosecute the above-identified application and to transact all business in the Patent Office connected therewith and requests that correspondence continue to be directed to the firm of WOODCOCK WASHBURN KURTZ MACKIEWICZ & NORRIS LLP at the above address.

Date: March 25, 1998

Michael P. Straher Registration No. 38,325

Woodcock Washburn Kurtz Mackiewicz & Norris LLP One Liberty Place - 46th Floor Philadelphia PA 19103

Telephone: (215) 568-3100 Facsimile: (215) 568-3439

© 1997 WWKMN

I hereby claim the benefit under 35 U.S.C. § 120 of any United States application(s) listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. § 112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose to the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office all information known to be material to patentability as defined in 37 CFR § 1.56 which became available between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of this application:

Application Serial No.	Filing Date	pending)
08/483,311	June 7, 1995	<u>Pending</u>
PCT/US95/00356 (U.S. serial no. 08/669,	<u>January 11, 1995</u> 505)	Allowed
08/179,970	January 11, 1994	Pending
08/180.134	Januarv 11, 1994	Patented

I hereby appoint the following attorney(s) and/or agent(s) to prosecute this application and to transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith: John W. Caldwell and Michael P. Straher, Registration Nos. 28,937 and 38,325 of the firm of WOODCOCK WASHBURN KURTZ MACKIEWICZ & NORRIS LLP, One Liberty Place - 46th Floor, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania 19103, and Herb Boswell, Laurel Bernstein and Andrew E. Granston, Registration Nos. 27,311, 37,280 and 38,473, of ISIS Pharmaceuticals, Inc., 2292 Faraday Avenue, Carlsbad, California 92008.

Address all telephone calls and correspondence to:

# Michael P. Straher WOODCOCK WASHBURN KURTZ MACKIEWICZ & NORRIS LLP

One Liberty Place - 46th Floor Philadelphia, PA 19103 Telephone No. 215-568-3100.

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the

United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

\* \$ 1

- 1			Date:					
	Full Name: Normand Hebert	Inventor's Signature:	1.1.0					
1	C.K	Nomand Kebert	112/4/97					
	Residence: Cardiff, California	Citizenship: Canada						
	Post Office Address: 1861 Montgomery Avenue Cardiff, California 92007							
	Full Name:	Inventor's Signature:	Date					
2	Residence:	Citizenship:						
	Post Office Address:							
	Full Name:	Inventor's Signature:	Date					
3	Residence:	Citizenship:						
	Post Office Address:							
	Full Name:	Inventor's Signature:	Date					
4	Residence:	Citizenship:						
	Post Office Address:							
	Full Name:	Inventor's Signature:	Date					
5	Residence:	Citizenship:						
	Post Office Address:							
1								